



THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE CERTIFICATION AND ACCREDITATION STANDARD

Vol 1 – Training and Certification

January 2023 – Version 1

DISCLAIMER

While every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. Likewise, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators while following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

© The Nautical Institute 2023
200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817
www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

The Nautical Institute – Certification and Accreditation Standard Vol 1. - DPSTTC-V1-20/01/2023

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI Certification and Accreditation Standard Vol 1 – Training and Certification		
Title NI Certification and Accreditation Standard Vol 1 – Training and Certification	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v2 (January 2022)	New content v1 (January 2023)
39 & 40	SECTION 6: Revalidation Criteria and Conversion Routes for DP Certificates		Amended as per Annex K- CPD Standard. CPD Conversion
65 & 85	Failure Mode Checklist		The Failure Mode Checklist has been updated
207	Annex K- Continuing Professional Development (CPD) for revalidation of the Nautical Institute DP Operator Certificate and DPVM Certificates		New

Contents

SECTION 1: Introduction to the dynamic positioning operator training	5
SECTION 2: Information applicable for all DP operator training schemes	12
SECTION 3: Offshore Training Scheme	16
SECTION 4: DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Training Scheme	24
SECTION 5: Shuttle Tanker Training Scheme	28
SECTION 6: Revalidation criteria and conversion routes for DP	32
Annex A – DP Induction Course	44
Annex B – DP Simulator Course	56
Annex C – DP Seatime Reduction Course	78
Annex D – Shuttle Tanker Course A	94
Annex E – Shuttle Tanker Course B	100
Annex F – DP Revalidation Course	108
Annex G – DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course	126
Annex H – The Nautical Institute DP Emergency Shiphandling Course	145
Annex I – Training and Certification Scheme for Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer Course)	156
Annex J – Training and Certification Scheme for DO Station Keeping Systems for Remote Operations	190
Annex K - Continuing Professional Development (CPD) for Revalidating for The Nautical Institute DP Operator Certificate and DPVM Certificates	207

SECTION 1 : Introduction to the dynamic positioning operator training



1.1 Introduction to the Dynamic Positioning Operator Training Standard

This document provides guidance on the Dynamic Positioning Operator (DPO) Training Scheme for providers wishing to be accredited to deliver training and for prospective DPOs.

The DP Accreditation and Certification schemes were developed by The Nautical Institute (the NI), working in association with flag states, the oil industry, the diving industry and offshore contractors to establish internationally accepted standards. It has been operational for the past 30 years.

The NI's Dynamic Positioning Operator (DPO) Training Scheme is an industry-recognised professional development route to becoming a qualified DPO. The scheme is managed by the NI for the benefit of the industry and includes the DPO certification criteria, certification processes and the accreditation of the training providers against agreed standards. Until 2013, it was the only training scheme for DPOs accepted internationally by the offshore industry and DPOs certified by the NI are often stated as a requirement by DP vessel charterers.

In September 1983, the scheme was adopted as an internationally accepted standard for any DSV or other DP-operated vessel working within 500 metres of any offshore installation by 105 out of 110 oil industry and major oil company representatives at a working conference in Aberdeen. It was rapidly recognised by the oil industry on a worldwide basis. Less than a month after the Aberdeen conference, the scheme was accepted as an official guideline by the then Minister of Energy for the UK North Sea operations. Shortly afterwards, it was also adopted by other North Sea operating flag states.

The NI has developed this standard in view of the IMO including DP training within Part B of the STCW Code and Convention (see end of this section). These standards have been developed and kept up-to-date with the full engagement and cooperation of all key stakeholders by working through the Dynamic Positioning Training Executive Group (DPTTEG) and its regional training provider (RTP) groups.

1.2 The International Safety Management Code (ISM) and dynamic positioning (DP) training

The scheme is considered as initial training towards the DP Certificate. Further training and experience should be provided by the company as per IMCA M117 guidelines and the ISM Code.

The objectives of the ISM Code are to ensure safety of life at sea, prevent human injury or loss of life and avoid damage to the environment, in particular to the marine environment.

All companies operating and/or owning ships must:

- Provide for safe practices in ship operations and a safe working environment
- Establish safeguards against all identified risks
- Continuously improve safety management skills of personnel ashore and on board ships, including preparing for emergencies related to both safety and environmental protection
- Comply with all mandatory rules and regulations
- Ensure that applicable codes, guidelines and standards recommended by IMO, flag states, classification societies and marine organisations are taken into account.

In regard to DP training, the ship operator, whether owner or charterer, *must* ensure that the DPO undertakes the required initial training, including shore courses (Induction and Simulator), and also that the operator is completely familiar with the equipment installed on the ship, both for normal operations and emergency situations.

The NI does not provide DP training. Instead, it accredits training institutions to provide training to trainee DPOs. A list of accredited DP training providers can be found on the NI's website, <http://www.nialexisplatform.org>

The DP Operator Training Scheme is based upon the completion of a number of components and the participation of many parties, namely the prospective DPO, the vessel owner/operator, the Master and DPOs of DP vessels and the training centres. This document provides guidance to these parties on the requirements and operation of the scheme. The NI issues the final DP Certificate to prospective DPOs upon satisfactory completion of all training phases.

This certification scheme applies to prospective DPOs who started the new Offshore Scheme after 1 January 2015 and hold the grey logbook, as well as trainees who have opted to transfer from the old to the new Offshore Scheme.

The old Offshore Scheme refers to those who started training before 1 January 2015 and who hold the A6 blue/green and A5 black logbooks. Details are on the NI Alexis website.

1.3 The composition and role of DPTEG

To ensure that the scheme continues to meet current industry needs, the Dynamic Positioning Training Executive Group was established to facilitate communication and input from a broad range of stakeholders.

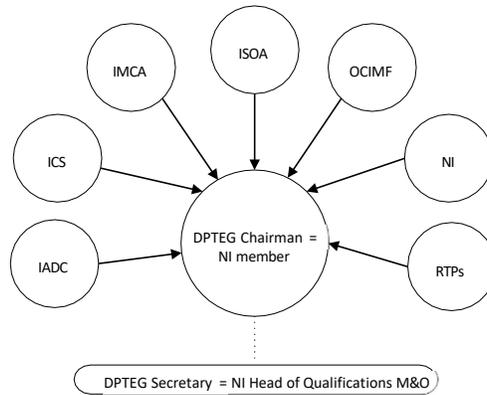
The group is a pan-industry forum of training providers, trade organisations and professional associations that have a remit or interest in DP training. It is self-funded from fees from accredited DP training providers and currently meets twice a year.

DPTEG's remit is to:

- Review and develop the DP operator training scheme in respect to an ever-changing maritime industry and regulatory environment
- Evaluate its effectiveness in providing the DP industry with trained DP operators
- Make decisions and implement actions to improve the DP operator training scheme and promote best practice
- Make decisions on a consensus basis
- Promote the standing of the DPO Training Scheme in the best interests of the industry.

DPTEG member organisations are:

- International Association of Drilling Contractors (IADC)
- International Chamber of Shipping (ICS)
- International Marine Contractors Association (IMCA)
- International Support Vessel Owners' Association (ISOA)
- Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF)
- Accredited DP training providers represented by their regional representative in the area (RTPs America, Europe and Asia) and The Nautical Institute.



Other organisations may be invited to join DPTEG, as appropriate. The DPTEG operates in accordance with the terms of reference for this group. For guidance and procedures, see Annex 10 in Volume 2 of the Nautical Institute Accreditation and Certification Standard.

1.4 The role of the Nautical Institute

The NI facilitates the accreditation of DP training centres, the certification of DPOs and consensus-building among DPTEG members and administers the schemes in accordance with the criteria agreed by DPTEG.

1.5 The role of regional training providers (RTPs)

The training providers are located throughout the world. Since they are widely dispersed and it would be unrealistic for all training providers to gather in one location, the centres were grouped into broad regions. These regions are:

- The Americas
- Europe and Africa
- Asia and Australia.

Each region elects a group representative/coordinator whose job it is to inform the group of DPTEG developments and gather group concerns/responses in order to relay these to DPTEG or ask that they be included in the DPTEG meeting agenda. Communication with training providers in their region is accomplished by email or web forum contact and relayed using the same means to the DPTEG chairman or other people/groups as appropriate.

Every year each of the three regions holds one face-to-face meeting and one online RTP meeting. Each training centre must send a representative to a meeting at least once every three years as a condition of accreditation. If a training centre does not send a representative, the centre can relay its concerns/responses through the regional representative/coordinator. Not sending a representative at least once every three years is grounds for withdrawal of accreditation. RTPs operate in accordance with the terms of reference for this group. For guidance and procedures, see Annex 10 in Volume 2 of the Nautical Institute Accreditation and Certification Standard.

1.6 Minimum requirements

Following the 2010 Manila amendments to the STCW Convention and Code, The Nautical Institute has implemented the following criteria for entry into the DP Operators Training Scheme:

The minimum qualification is set at STCW Regulation II/1 - II/2 - II/3 Deck, Regulation III/1 – III /2 – III/3 – III/6 Engine and Regulation III/6 for ETOs

STCW	DEFINITION
II/1 Deck	Officers in charge of a navigational watch on ships of 500gt or more
II/2 Deck	Master or chief mate on ships of 500gt or more
II/3 Deck	Officers in charge of a navigational watch and Masters on ships of less than 500gt
III/1 Engine	Officers in charge of an engineering watch in a manned engine-room or designated duty engineers in a periodically unmanned engine-room
III/2 Engine	Chief engineer officers and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery of 3,000kW propulsion power or more
III/3 Engine	Chief engineer officers and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery of between 750kW and 3,000kW propulsion power
III/6 ETO	Electro-technical officer

Alternative appropriate marine vocational qualifications (MVQs) will be considered on a case by case basis. The NI defines an MVQ as a *non-STCW Certificate of Competency issued by a White List maritime administration for use in the administration's local waters only.*

Naval officers with appropriate watchkeeping qualifications and those whose qualification can be found on the approved list may be accepted into the training scheme without pre-approval or reference to NI. The approved list can be found on the website, www.nialexisplatform.org. In case of any doubt, training centres and prospective DPOs should check qualifications with the NI.

Officer trainees (cadets or ratings on a defined training programme):

- Prospective offshore DPOs on the new scheme who are in the process of training for an STCW certificate may complete the DP Induction Course (Phase A), the 60 DP sea time days (Phase B) and the DP Simulator Course (Phase C). The remaining 60 DP sea time days (Phase D) and the subsequent suitability sign-off (Phase E) must be completed only after they hold an appropriate STCW Certificate of Competency.
- Candidates who completed Phase B when they were a cadet are not allowed to claim for STR in Phase D of the training scheme and must complete a minimum of 60 DP sea time days in Phase D.
- Prospective DPOs on the DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Scheme who are in the process of training for an STCW certificate may complete the DP Induction Course (Phase A), the 60 days on board with 15 DP operations (Phase B) and the DP Simulator Course (Phase C). The remaining 60 days on board and 15 DP operations (Phase D) and the subsequent suitability sign-off (Phase E) must be completed only after they hold an appropriate STCW Certificate of Competency.
- Prospective DPOs on the Shuttle Tanker Scheme who are in the process of training for an STCW certificate may complete the DP Induction Course (Phase 1), the 24 sea time days and two offshore loading operations (Phase 2), the task section (Phase 2) and the Simulator Course (Phase 3). The remaining phases must be completed only after they hold an appropriate STCW Certificate of Competency.

These rules became effective from 1 January 2015 and reflect changes introduced from 1 January 2016; they apply to those who have already begun training on the new scheme as well as new starters. The time permitted to complete the training scheme for those who started the Induction Course after 1 January 2015 is five years.

Centres should keep electronic copies of students' documentation for a minimum of five years (or longer if required by local policies) for audit purposes as well as. They may also be needed for reference should any questions arise at a later stage of the student's application process.

MARINE VOCATIONAL QUALIFICATION (MVQ)

Before starting the Induction Course, the candidate must present his/her documents to the training centre. If these do not meet the minimum requirements as set out in this document, the training centre will advise the candidate to contact the NI for official approval to attend the course. The candidate must provide a copy of the documents of competency or proficiency and/or any other relevant document as evidence of qualification. The NI will assess those documents and may or may not issue an authorisation letter to the candidate to start the course. This procedure must be undertaken before the candidate starts the Induction Course. Some marine vocational qualifications do not require an authorisation letter - these are listed on the website, www.nialexisplatform.org/certification/.

STCW CERTIFICATE OF COMPETENCY

Training centres are required to ask for, and keep, a copy of the Certificate of Competency of their students before accepting them on to the Induction Course and the DP scheme. The Certificate of Competency number should be noted and properly recorded by the centre in the student record as well as in the logbook provided to them. The NI will require a copy of the Certificate of Competency when receiving their application to cross-check the information.

OFFICER TRAINEES (cadets or ratings on a defined training programme)

Before joining the Induction Course, officer trainees should present proof, such as a letter from the company employing them or the college they are attending, indicating that they are on STCW or MVQ training.

1.7 STCW limitations on certificate

From 1 January 2012 to 31 December 2014, DP Certificates were endorsed with the following:

Valid for use in accordance with the privileges of the holder's Certificate of Competency.

From 1 January 2015, DP Certificates contained this revised sentence:

DP Certificate valid for use in accordance with the privileges of the holder's Certificate of Competency and/or Certificate of Proficiency.

From 1 January 2017 this endorsement has been used on all new and revalidated DP Certificates.

This means that the holder may use the DP Certificate only within the limitations allowed by their Certificate of Competency or Proficiency. This is to allow operators who possess non-STCW local Certificates of Competency or Proficiency to operate small DP vessels to the limits allowed on those certificates, ie within restricted areas/limits from the coast of the issuing state on vessels of a certain size only.

1.8 Old and the new Training Scheme rules

The old scheme and its policies will remain valid for those who started training prior to 1 January 2015. All trainee DPOs who started the training scheme before January 2015 will have their training assessed according to the old DP scheme rules, unless the trainee has opted to transfer to the new offshore scheme. It should be noted that only the Induction (Basic) Course will remain valid when transferring schemes (no sea time or tasks), provided all training is then completed within five years.

Trainee DPOs who started the training scheme from 1 January 2015 (ie the Induction Course) will carry on training under the criteria and conditions set up for the new Training Scheme.

1.9 STCW Part B¹ - Guidance on the Training and Experience for Personnel Operating Dynamic Positioning Systems

Section B-V/f*

1. Dynamic positioning is defined as the system whereby a self-propelled vessel's position and heading is automatically controlled by using its own propulsion units.
2. Personnel engaged in operating a Dynamic Positioning (DP) system should receive relevant training and practical experience. Theoretical elements of this training should enable Dynamic Positioning Operators (DPOs) to understand the operation of the DP system and its components. Knowledge, understanding and experience gained should enable personnel to operate vessels safely in DP, with due regard for safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment.
3. The content of training and experience should include coverage of the following components of a DP system:
 - a. DP control station;
 - b. power generation and management;
 - c. propulsion units;
 - d. position reference systems;
 - e. heading reference systems;
 - f. environmental reference systems; and
 - g. external force reference systems, such as hawser tension gauges.
4. Training and experience should cover the range of routine DP operations, as well as the handling of DP faults, failures, incidents and emergencies, to ensure that operations are continued or terminated safely.

Training should not be limited to DPOs and DP Masters only; other personnel on board, such as electrotechnical and engineer officers, may require additional training and experience to ensure that they are able to carry out their duties on a DP vessel. Consideration should be given to conducting appropriate DP drills as a part of onboard training and experience. DPOs should be knowledgeable of the type and purpose of documentation associated with DP operations, such as operational manuals, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEAs) and capability plots.

5. All training should be given by properly qualified and suitably experienced personnel.
6. Upon appointment to a vessel operating in DP mode, the Master, DPOs and other DP-trained personnel should be familiarized with the specific equipment fitted on and the characteristics of the vessel. Particular consideration should be given to the nature of the work of the vessel and the importance of the DP system to this work.

* Note there are no corresponding regulations in the Convention or sections in part A of the Code for sections B-V/a, B-V/b, B-V/c, B-V/d, B-V/e, B-V/f and B-V/g

¹ STCW Including 2010 Manila Amendments: STCW Convention and STCW Code. International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers. International Maritime Organization, 2011, p341

SECTION 2: Information applicable to all DP operator training schemes



2.1 Statement of Suitability

The attention of Masters is drawn to this statement:

the suitability of the officer to undertake full DP watchkeeping responsibility on board a DP vessel.

This is the final assessment of the trainee DPO and Masters should carefully consider whether they are able to affirm the statements within this section before signing.

The Statement of Suitability should be completed at the end of final period of sea time prior to a certificate application being made.

Masters signing this should enter their own DP Certificate number if held. The signature and the ship's stamp should correspond to the final entry in Phase D (for Offshore Scheme) or in Phase 4 (for Shuttle Tanker Scheme). If the Master is not a DPO, the Statement of Suitability will need to be countersigned by a certified DPO on board.

If the Master is the holder of the logbook he/she should have this section signed by a certificated DPO or the Relief Master on board, who should enter his/her own DP Certificate number.

2.2 Time to complete the training scheme

To avoid deterioration of skills during the training period, all elements of the DP training scheme must be completed within five years. The five-year rule applies for those who have entered the schemes from 1 January 2015.

When applying for a new certificate and submitting documents to The Nautical Institute, **ALL** components of the programme (shore-based courses, DP sea time, task sections, Statement of Suitability form and other elements) must have been completed within the five years prior to the date the Statement of Suitability is signed. In the event any of the training phases fall outside the five-year validity period, the trainee will be required to repeat the expired training phase. Providing all training has been completed within this timeframe, the time between the date the Statement of Suitability was signed and the date the application is received at the NI should not exceed three months.

2.3 Company confirmation letter

Trainee DPOs are required to provide a confirmation or testimonial letter from the shipping companies for all the DP sea time in Phases B and D of the Offshore and DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Scheme, or for all the sea time and offshore loading of the Shuttle Tanker Scheme. This is also valid for those revalidating using any DP sea time dated after 1 January 2014. This letter must follow the conditions below:

- Be written on original headed paper from the shipping company.
- Be signed and stamped by the operations manager or marine superintendent or equivalent. Letters signed by Masters or agency staff are not acceptable.
- Be written and dated only after the DPO has completed the DP sea time claimed.
- Confirm the total time the applicant has performed as a trainee DPO on board the vessel(s).
- Offshore Scheme: recorded DP sea time must only include actual DP time served on board the vessel(s), not time on leave, attending courses etc. This DP sea time must be broken down and listed as individual trips and days.
- Offshore Scheme POSMOOR/TAM DP vessels: DP seatime can be claimed on board a POSMOOR/TAM DP vessel only when the vessel does not have a mooring system deployed. The company DP sea time confirmation letter must confirm that the time was completed when the vessel

did not have a mooring system deployed. If applicable, the NI reserves the right to ask for future and more detailed information, such as deck log.

- DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Scheme: recorded days on board, number dates and locations of the DP operations
- Shuttle Tanker Scheme: recorded sea time, number, dates and location of the offshore loading operations.
- Limited DPO Certificate-holders upgrading to Unlimited Certificates need only provide confirmation of DP sea time days gained after their Limited Certificates were issued.
- DP sea time (for Offshore Scheme), offshore loading operations (for Shuttle Tanker Scheme) and DP operation (for Self-elevating Scheme): experience not covered by a letter will not be considered for the DP application unless the candidate can prove extenuating reasons.
- The confirmation letter must be obtained by the candidate and sent to the NI *with* their application, not afterwards. Applications received by the NI without a confirmation letter for all the DP sea time claimed will be treated as a query, which will delay issuing a certificate.
- It is the company's responsibility to cross-check the DP sea time claimed by the trainee DPO to ensure that the candidate has completed the proper training and undertaken the correct amount of DP sea time. Should any false statement be received, the NI reserves the right to take such action as necessary. The company should check the information that they are confirming against deck/DP logs and internal information.
- The NI reserves the right to undertake spot checks directly with the company to confirm the signees and any other relevant information for verification of sea time. This includes the daily report of the vessel and the crew list.

2.4 Certification application

The attention of trainee and Masters is drawn to the Logbook and Application guides that are available on the NI's Alexis Platform website (<http://www.nialexisplatform.org/>) and on request from the NI.

It is strongly recommended that the relevant guides are read before making an application so as to avoid incorrect completion of the logbook. Failure to meet the requirements for application of a certificate will cause a delay in issuing a certificate.

The logbook has been designed so that all elements of the training scheme can be completed and entered. To apply for a DP Certificate, the applicant is required to register his/her personal details and DP sea time online through the NI's Alexis Platform website.

It is important that every period of service on board a DP vessel should have a start and finish date and be authenticated by the Master's signature. Entries without a finish date will not count towards the required DP sea time.

If the trainee DPO wishes to submit his/her logbook while still on board the DP vessel he/she should have an appropriate date entered; that date may not be in the future. Entries should not be block-signed or stamped.

The trainee DPO may decide to stay on board after submitting their logbook to be assessed and verified by the NI. In that case this sea time cannot be used or counted towards DP sea time to obtain the DP Certificate and/or a future upgrade of their DP Certificate. The NI will only consider sea time gained after the DP Certificate has been issued.

After completing the online application, the applicant must send the following documents to the NI:

- Copy of the STCW or NVQ certificate (page with personal details, validity date and CoC number)
- Original DP logbook
- Copy of passport personal details page
- Original company confirmation letter/s confirming all DP sea time

- Signed and dated PDF checklist available on the candidate's account after payment. It is compulsory for the trainee DPO to sign the declaration of data contained in the online application. Any other supporting documentation.

The NI reserves the right to return the logbook and application to candidates who do not apply online or if anything is found to be incorrect or incomplete in the application or training.

Candidates whose companies have verified that their applications have met the requirements before they submit those applications to the NI tend to be more successful. Verification also assists the company in the management of their DP personnel and their training and progression.

2.5 Loss of certificate or logbook

The NI treats certificates and logbooks as controlled, official documents that cannot exist in more than one copy. If the new logbook (grey or burgundy) is lost, the trainee is required to provide an affidavit and police report to the NI. Only the NI can replace the logbook. The logbook will be allocated the same individual number as the lost one and will bear a stamp on the appropriate pages indicating that it is a duplicate.

If the trainee DPO holds an old version of the DP logbook, two situations will be considered.

Holders of blue or green logbooks:

- These logbooks are not numbered and only the training centre where the trainee DPO undertook the Induction Course will be able to replace this document on condition of receiving a copy of the affidavit and police report from the trainee DPO. Please note some training centres may no longer hold stock of these logbooks. If this is the case, please contact the NI.

Training centres are required to inform the NI of every logbook replaced and a note is put into the trainee DPO's Institute account for future verification. If a DP Certificate has been issued, then the duplicate logbook and certificate can only be replaced by the NI.

Holders of black logbooks issued in 2013:

- These logbooks are numbered and only the NI can replace them. The original affidavit and police report must be sent to the NI.

The logbook will be allocated the same individual number as the lost one and each page will bear a stamp indicating it is a duplicate.

2.6 False information or fraudulent applications

The NI continues to receive a number of fraudulent DP applications. Staff and training centres are being especially vigilant and cross-check directly with companies to verify DP sea time claimed by trainee DPOs. Applications and certificates that are found to be fraudulent may be revoked and the individual banned from the NI's DP Training Scheme for a period of up to five years. Others found involved in the fraud cases may also have their DP Certificates removed and banned from the system for a period of time. The NI reserves the right not to accept applications or letters from companies involved in fraudulent cases.

SECTION 3: Offshore Training Scheme



3.1 The DP Offshore Training Scheme

By completing the Offshore training scheme within five years the DP operator may receive one of the three types of DP Certificate:

- Unlimited Certificate: for training completed on board vessels classed DP 1/2/3 where at least 60 DP sea time days have been completed on vessels of DP Class 2 or 3.
- Limited Certificate: for training completed on board vessels classed DP1/2/3 where less than 60 DP sea time days have been completed on vessels of DP Class 2 or 3.
- Restricted to Unclassed vessels: for training completed on board vessels of Unclassed DP, DP Class 0 or a mix of experience on board classed and unclassified vessels where insufficient time has been completed to be eligible for one of the other certificates.

3.2. Dynamic Positioning Offshore Scheme courses

INDUCTION COURSE (see Annex A)

This course involves both theory and practice on a simulated DP system and covers the following topics:

- Principles of DP
- Elements of the DP system
- Practical operation of the DP system
- Position reference systems
- Environment sensors and ancillary equipment
- Power generation and supply and propulsion
- DP operations.

SIMULATOR COURSE (see Annex B)

This course principally involves simulated DP operations including errors, faults and failures, giving the participants the opportunity to apply the lessons learnt in both the Induction Course and subsequent DP sea time days. It covers the following topics:

- Practical operation of the DP system
- DP operations
- DP alarms, warnings and emergency procedures.

SEA TIME REDUCTION COURSE (STR) (see Annex C)

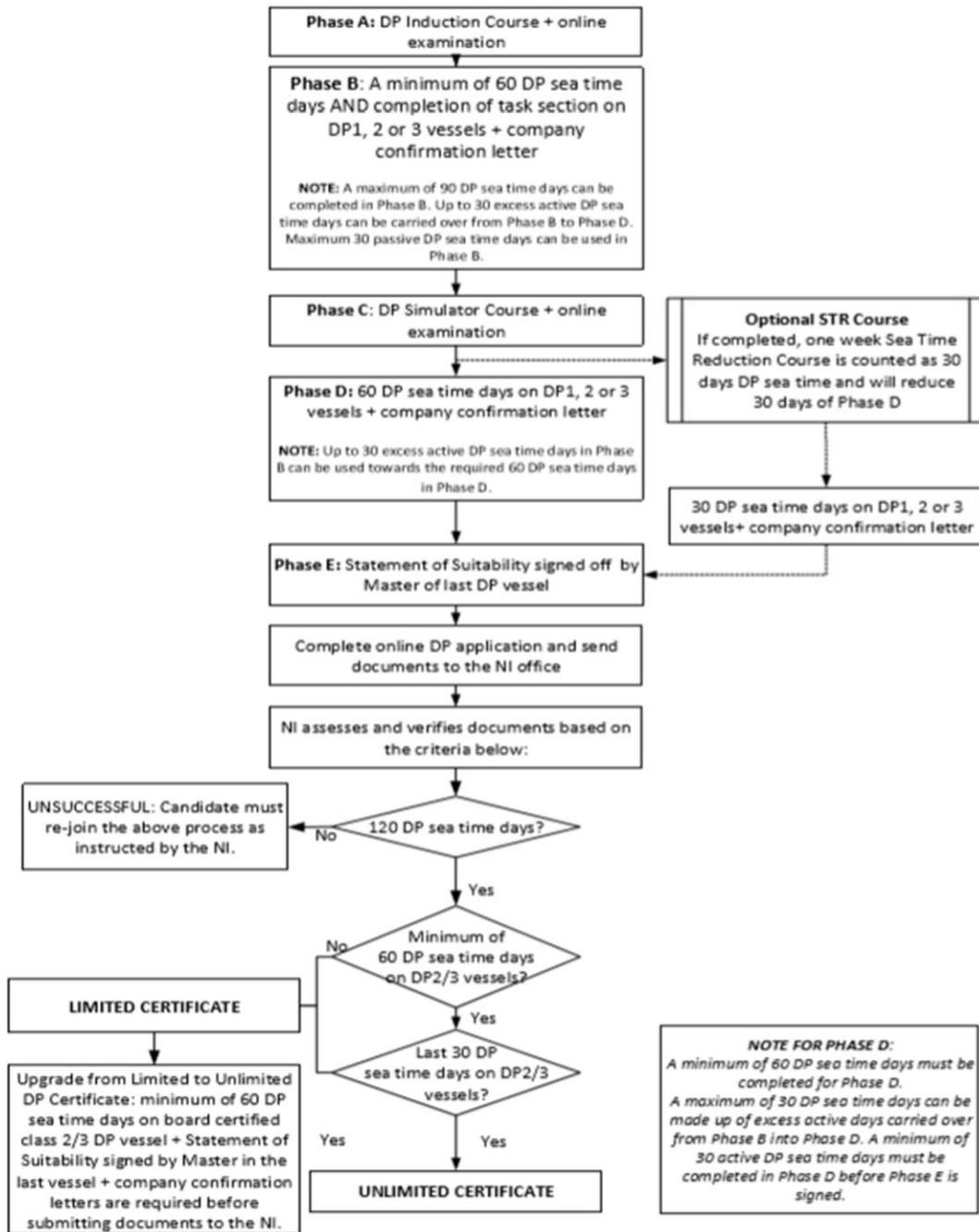
The period of supervised DP watchkeeping during the second block of DP sea time may be reduced on the satisfactory completion of an intensive DP simulator training course.

REVALIDATION COURSE (see Annex F)

This course allows a certified DPO to revalidate without the sea time requirement when taken for the first time, or when taken after a subsequent revalidation with 150 DP sea time days.

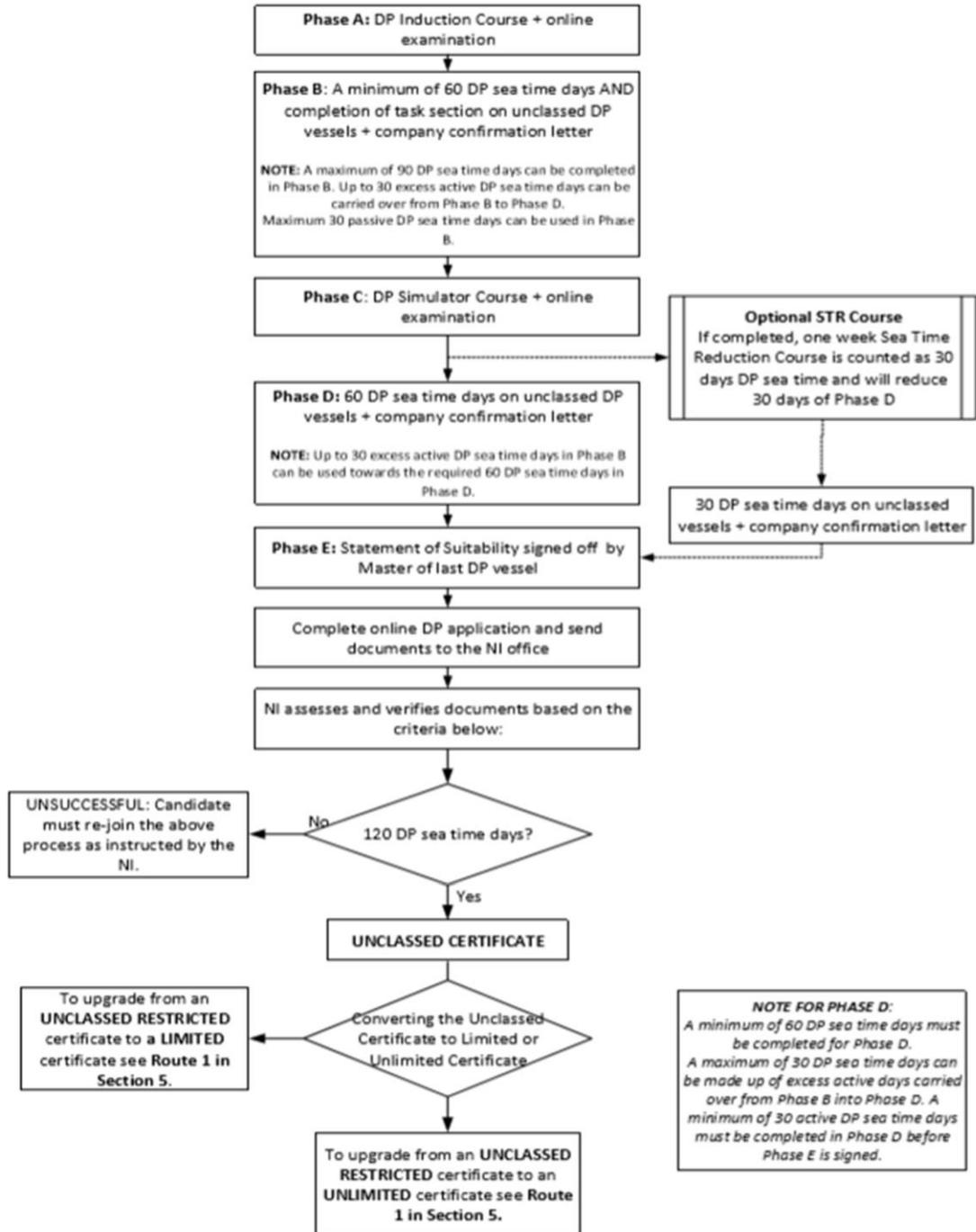
3.3. Offshore Limited/Unlimited DP Certificate flowchart

The components of the scheme are set out in the following flowchart. To obtain a DP Operator Certificate (Limited and Unlimited), the route outlined below must be followed. The old scheme route to obtain a DP Operator Certificate can be found on the DP Help Page of the NI website.



3.4 Offshore Unclassed DP Certificate flowchart

This flowchart sets out the route that must be followed in order to obtain a DP Operator Certificate (restricted to Unclassed vessels).



3.5 Phases B and D - DP sea time and tasks

DEFINITION OF DP SEA TIME DAY

One DP sea time day can be counted if the trainee DPO is involved with active or passive DP training for a minimum of two hours per day claimed. The allowance of up to 25% of **total** qualifying time in passive mode may only be completed during Phase B (**up to a maximum of 30 days**). A minimum of 75% of the total DP sea time claimed must be done in active mode.

NOTE: The wording concerning the amount of passive sea time allowed has been changed to clarify the rules for both the trainee DPOs and for the training centres.

Active – with propulsion under the guidance of a NI-certified DPO

- Using the DP system to control the ship
- Setting up on DP
- Completing task sections combined with DP operations
- Time on watch as part of a member of the DP watch or monitoring DP watch (Master)
- FMEA trials
- Annual trials
- Class trials
- Charterer trials
- Field arrival trials
- DP proving trials
- Emergency ship handling training using manual controls using **ONLY** the thrusters available after worst case failure

Passive – without propulsion under the guidance of a NI-certified DPO

- Training on inbuilt ship-based DP simulator on a vessel with simulator mode in the DP system or a standalone DP simulator
- Task sections training and assessments by a NI-certified DPO and countersigned by the Master.

Notes about the DP sea time definition

- Not all DP training has to be completed monitoring the DP system with the vessel in a high-risk position.
- Passive DP sea time allows DPOs to gain DP training and familiarisation with a vessel without exposing the vessel to risk.
- Passive DP sea time can only be claimed between the Induction and Simulator courses.
- Most of the tasks in the task section of the logbook can be completed using passive DP sea time. The task section of the NI DP logbook clearly states what training can be conducted in passive mode.
- The NI DP sea time days allow for many different DP vessel types and operations and specify the minimum number of hours that will count as a day. If the ship and trainee DPO is engaged in DP for more than two hours in the day, only one day may still be claimed.
- DP sea time cannot be counted in any circumstances when using the DP autopilot mode.
- It is the duty of the senior DPO (NI-certified DPO on board) to verify and sign off DP tasks.
- DP sea time must be verified and signed off by the Master.
- The definition of DP sea time and the active and passive concept is not valid for the Shuttle Tanker Training Scheme.
- Position mooring or thruster-assisted mooring (TAM): The time on board a vessel with the classification of POSITION MOORING or THRUSTER-ASSISTED MOORING (TAM) and DP class notation can be counted as DP sea time for initial DP training. The NI requires the candidate to present evidence that the anchor was not deployed for the DP sea time claimed during DP operations when applying for a DP certificate.

There is one page for each embarkation for recording DP sea time in the logbook. These pages will hold the information for 10 DP days so additional pages may need to be used to record all DP days for the

embarkation. The DP sea time dates must be recorded individually each day according to the DP operation of the vessel. This is to be signed off by the certificated DPO/Master.

Practical training with manual shiphandling is not counted except as stated above. Every trainee DPO must be able to control a vessel manually, but manual shiphandling training must be conducted in addition to DP training.

The allowance of up to 25% of the qualifying time in passive mode may only be completed during Phase B. More details on the definition of a DP sea time day can be found in the 'Clarification Note from The Nautical Institute – Guidance to Masters and DPOs, which is available on the NI website.

NOTE: Certified Senior DPO is the DP operator holding a valid NI DP Certificate with delegated responsibility from the Master as the senior person in charge of the DP watch.

3.6 DP sea time between the Induction and Simulator courses, task section

A minimum of 60 DP sea time days between these courses is required for completion of the task sections of the logbook. Candidates are eligible for admission on to the Simulator Course only if the Induction Course and task section is in date. Training centres are not permitted to accept students on to the Simulator Course if the task sections are not fully completed.

Any time gained in excess of the 60 DP sea time days in Phase B, between the Induction and the Simulator Course (**to a maximum of 30 days**), will normally be counted towards the total requirement of 120 DP sea time days. However, the candidate must complete at least 30 DP sea time days after the Simulator Course and obtain the Statement of Suitability signed by the Master of the last vessel the candidate has served on before submitting his/her documents to the NI.

NOTE: Trainee DPOs completing the blended Induction Course return to the training centre within three months after completion of the online theory lessons to complete the induction course in its entirety. No seetime will be accepted until induction course is completed in its entirety.

The DP sea time should be carefully and accurately entered in this section. It is important that the DP class and the DP system are entered. The dates of joining and leaving the vessel may be confirmed through the discharge book, but not the DP sea time, which must be confirmed by the company to verify the DP sea time logged.

Any DP sea time gained while the logbook is at the NI for verification will now be counted towards gaining certification or applying for an upgrade

The task section can only be signed off by a certificated DPO on board the vessel. Those responsible for signing this section of the logbook should adhere to high professional standards and appropriately rigorous assessments of trainees before signing that a training task has been completed.

The tasks must not be block-signed; each task must be signed and dated individually.

The Master is required to countersign each section once all tasks in that section have been completed and signed by a certified DPO on board. If the Master is a certified DPO on board, then a note shall be made in the logbook and the Master's DP Certificate number must be annotated for verification. The Master can then sign both sections.

If the trainee DPO is the Master, he/she is permitted to sign off the task sections once the certified DPO on board has signed off the tasks for that section individually.

3.7 DP sea time reduction

The period of supervised DP sea time days after the Simulator Course may be reduced by a maximum of 30 days by the satisfactory completion of an intensive DP Simulator Course.

This course can be done straight after the Simulator Course, but trainee DPOs are required to do a minimum of 30 DP sea time days on board a classed DP vessel and have the Statement of Suitability signed by Master after the course. A company confirmation letter is required for verification of that DP sea time.

As with the other components of the scheme, all DP time or courses leading to reduction of DP time must have been completed within the previous five years.

The Sea Time Reduction training cannot be used for upgrading a certificate from Limited to Unlimited.

3.8. Calculation of sea time to issue an Unlimited Certificate, Limited Certificate or Unclassed Restricted Certificate

UNLIMITED CERTIFICATE will be gained if the trainee DPO has:

- 120 DP sea time days entirely done on board a DP2/3 classed vessel, or
- 120 DP sea time days, of which a minimum of 60 DP sea time days are on board a DP2/3 vessel, which must include the final 30 DP sea time days before the Phase E sign-off.

LIMITED CERTIFICATE will be gained if the trainee DPO has:

- 120 DP sea time days on board a DP1/DP2/DP3 classed vessel where less than 60 required DP sea time days are completed on board a DP2/3 vessel.

UNCLASSED DP VESSEL RESTRICTED CERTIFICATE will be gained if the trainee has:

- 120 DP sea time days on board a DP Unclassed vessel, or
- 120 DP sea time days on board a DP Class 0, or
- 120 DP sea time days with a mix of experience on board classed and Unclassed DP vessels where the conditions identified above have not been met.

Note

DP-certified classed vessel means the vessel must have a DP Class 1, 2 or 3 notations with a certificate issued by a classification society and not simply be fitted with DP equipment or capability.

Unclassed vessel means one with a DP capability but not classified or certified by a classification society. The NI also considers DP Class 0 vessels fall under this definition.

3.9 Upgrading from Limited to Unlimited Certificate

To upgrade from a Limited to an Unlimited Certificate, the DPO will need to obtain a minimum of 60 DP sea time days on board DP 2 or 3 classed vessels, recorded in an NI DP logbook. Any DP sea time logged on board DP 2 or DP3 classed vessels previously used to obtain a Limited Certificate cannot be counted again, but any other valid sea time on a DP2 or DP3 classed vessel will count for the issuance towards an Unlimited Certificate. The NI will implement this on a case-by-case basis.

When applying to upgrade to an Unlimited Certificate, the NI will require the logbook, a new Statement of Suitability upgrade form signed by the Master of the last Class 2 or 3 vessel, the original Limited Certificate and the confirmation letter from the shipping company for the new sea time experience to be sent in with the application.

The online application for an upgrade should be carried out before sending in the documents listed above to the NI. The applicant must use the same candidate customer account number that was issued prior to his/her first DP Certificate. Once all qualification requirements have been confirmed, the NI will issue an Unlimited Certificate.

3.10 Upgrading from Unclassed to Limited/Unlimited

Information on how to upgrade an Unclassed DP Certificate to a Limited or Unlimited DP Certificate can be found in Section 6.

SECTION 4: DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Training Scheme



4.1 The DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Training Scheme

By completing the DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Training Scheme the DP operator will receive a 'Restricted to Self-Elevating Platform' DP Certificate. This type of certification is restricted to DPOs who have completed their DP training on board self-elevating vessels.

DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) training is completed differently to the Offshore Training Scheme and trainees should look carefully at the differences. The training scheme uses the same DP Offshore Logbook for recording the time on board the vessel, but additional documents must be completed.

It uses the same lettered phases as the Offshore Scheme, trainee's record days on board the DP vessel and number of DP operations. A minimum of 60 days on board a DP classed vessel plus 15 DP operations must be completed in Phase B along with the task sections and then 60 days on board a DP classed vessel and 15 DP operations are also required for Phase D. The days on board in Phases B and D are to be recorded within these sections of the logbook. The DP operations that are completed during this time on board will be recorded on an additional form. The DP sea time should be carefully and accurately entered in these sections. It is important that the DP class and the DP system are entered.

The task section for DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Scheme also differs from the Offshore Training Scheme. A separate task section document has been produced which will replace the task sections within the logbook.

The task section may only be signed off by a certificated DPO on board the vessel. Those responsible for signing this section of the logbook should adhere to high professional standards and appropriately rigorous assessments of trainees before signing that a training task has been completed.

The tasks must not be block-signed; each task must be signed and dated individually.

The Master is required to countersign each section once all tasks in that section have been completed and signed by a certificated DPO on board. If the Master is a certified DPO on board, then a note shall be made in the logbook and the Master's DP Certificate number must be annotated for verification. The Master can then sign both sections. The signature confirming the time on board the DP vessel in the logbook should match the Master's signature for the tasks for the dates that they were on board.

If the trainee DPO is the Master, he/she is permitted to sign off the task sections once the certified DPO on board has signed off the tasks for that section individually.

Copies of the additional documents required for the DP Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) Scheme can be obtained from the training centre and from the NI Alexis Platform website.

Company confirmation letters are required for all DP operations and sea time.

Any DP sea time gained while the logbook is at the NI for verification will now be counted towards gaining certification or applying for an upgrade.

4.2 Dynamic Positioning Offshore Scheme courses

INDUCTION COURSE (see Annex A)

This course involves both theory and practice on a simulated DP system and covers the following topics:

- Principles of DP
- Elements of the DP system
- Practical operation of the DP system
- Position reference systems
- Environment sensors and ancillary equipment
- Power generation and supply and propulsion
- DP operations.

SIMULATOR COURSE (see Annex B)

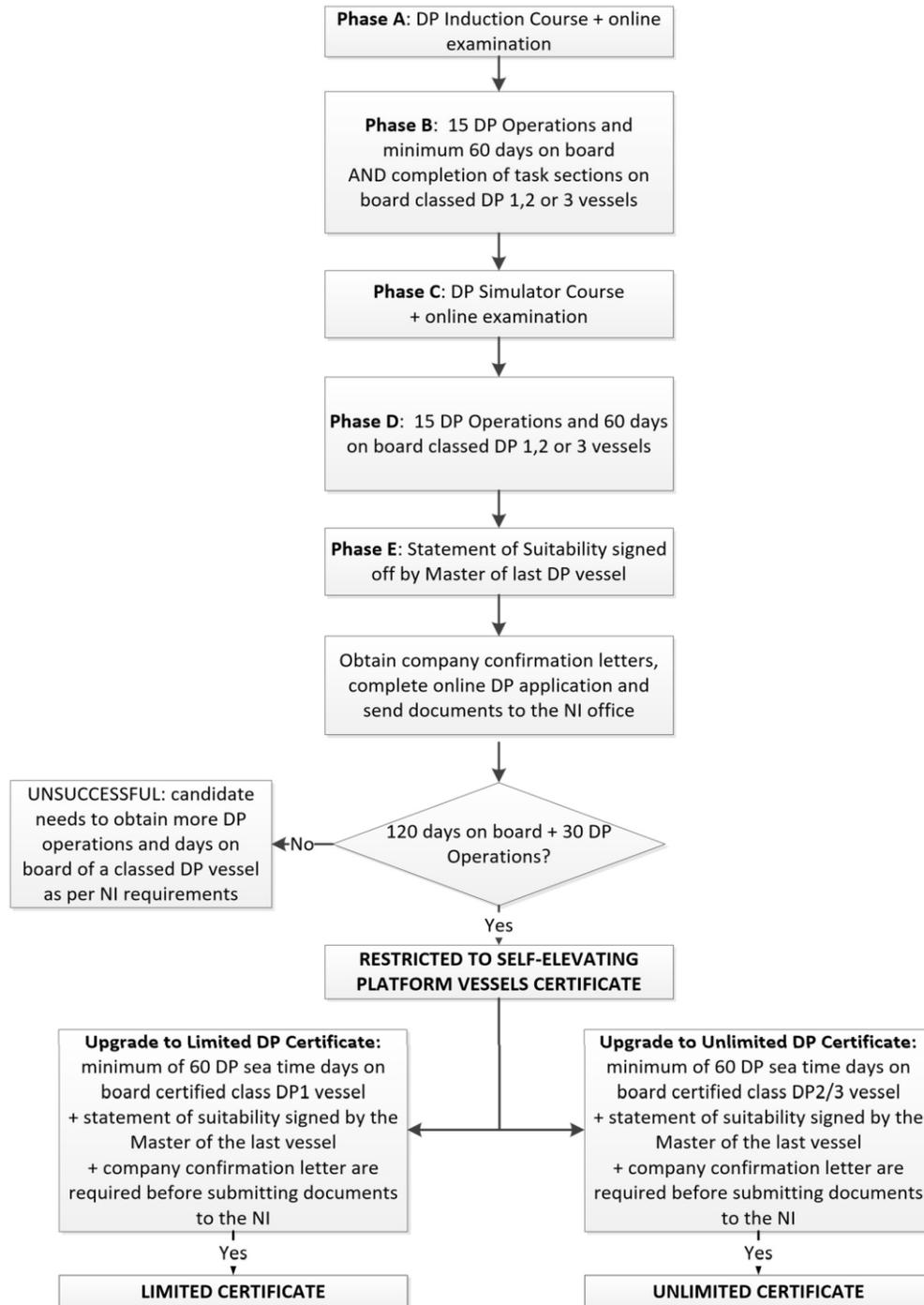
This course principally involves simulated DP operations including errors, faults and failures, giving the participants the opportunity to apply the lessons learnt in both the Induction Course and subsequent DP sea time days. It covers the following topics:

- Practical operation of the DP system
- DP operations
- DP alarms, warnings and emergency procedures.

4.3 Converting from Restricted to Self-Elevating Platform DP Certificate to a Limited/Unlimited DP Certificate

Information on how to convert from a Restricted to Self-Elevating Platform DP Certificate to a Limited or Unlimited DP Certificate can be found in Section 6.

4.4 Self-Elevating Platform (Jack-up) DP Certificate flowchart



Definition of a self-elevating DP operation:
 Site arrival, set-up on DP, approach and elevation

SECTION 5: Shuttle Tanker Training Scheme



5.1 DP Shuttle Tanker Training Scheme

On successful completion of the Shuttle Tanker Training Scheme the DP operator will receive a Restricted Shuttle Tanker Certificate. This type of certification is restricted to DPOs who have completed their DP training on board DP shuttle tanker vessels.

Shuttle tanker training and the definition of sea time is completely different to the Offshore Training Scheme and trainees should look carefully at the differences. Shuttle tanker training has a total of four phases to be completed by the trainee DPO as described below:

PHASE 1: DP Induction Course + online examination.

PHASE 2: The activities in Phase 2 can be done in any order*.

PATHWAY A: Minimum 96 days as practical time on board a shuttle tanker with participation in at least eight offshore loading operations (field arrival, set-up approach, connection, loading, disconnection and departure). Both criteria must be achieved, ie if the trainee completes only seven offshore loading operation within 96 days, it will be necessary for the trainee to undertake more sea time until he/she completes the eighth offshore loading operation as required OR

PATHWAY B: Minimum of 96 days on board with participation of six onboard simulation loading operations and four real loading operations (field arrival, set-up approach, connection, loading, disconnection and departure). The onboard simulators are able to simulate a real experience of approach to buoys and positioning during loading operations. The engine and bridge team work together to simulate problems with thrusters and power management.

ACTIVITIES (Same required for both pathways)

- ACTIVITY 1: DP Simulator Course to help consolidate general DP theory and understanding as well as coping with errors, faults and failures + practical assessment + online examination (*a minimum of 24 days sea time and two offshore loading operations must be completed before the trainee attends the DP Simulator Course*)
- ACTIVITY 2: Training Course A - Position reference system course
- ACTIVITY 3: Training Course B – Shuttle tanker-specific simulator course.

PHASE 3: Minimum of 24 sea time days as practical time on board a shuttle tanker with participation in at least two complete offshore loading operations to include field arrival, set-up approach, connection, loading, disconnection and departure. Both criteria to be achieved.

PHASE 4: Statement of Suitability signed off by the Master of the last shuttle tanker vessel. Applicants must also provide confirmation letters for all sea time and offshore loading operations.

* A minimum of 24 days sea time and two offshore loading operations must be completed before the trainee attends the DP Simulator Course.

The shuttle tanker vessel Master and the vessel operating company are both required to confirm that the trainee's practical experience and understanding is satisfactory. This provides the assurance that the trainee's recorded entries are legitimate and that they have achieved at a recognised level of competence.

The Shuttle Tanker Scheme gives an aggregate minimum of 120 days on board and a minimum of 10 loading operations as the pre-certification practical experience. Phase 3 practical experience stage must comply with 24 days on board and two complete loading operations – whichever limit is reached last. There is no option for any sea time reduction within this programme, ie the Sea Time Reduction and

Offshore Loading Courses will not reduce the sea time required but will be counted for training purposes only.

Note

Offshore loading operations not conducted with the DP system in use shall not be counted as Offshore Loading Operations within the training and certification scheme.

Definition of shuttle tanker days: Shuttle tanker sea service days are not the same as those in the Offshore scheme. Shuttle tanker sea time days are considered the days from embarking to disembarking the shuttle tanker. However, the times recorded for the offshore loading operations should be done while the vessel is operating in DP mode.

Submission of an application to the NI for the Shuttle Tanker DPO Certificate shall be made upon satisfactory assessment of performance. Appropriate confirmations and details from the Master and company that the training regime has been complied with are required with the application. Training entries are to specify the location and type of installations experienced.

5.2 Shuttle Tanker Training Scheme courses

The Shuttle Tanker Training Scheme requires the trainee to complete the same DP Induction and DP Simulator Courses required of all other DP trainees. In addition, Shuttle Tanker Course trainees must complete two additional courses, as below.

INDUCTION COURSE (see Annex A)

This course involves both theory and practice on a simulated DP system and covers the following topics:

- Principles of DP
- Elements of the DP system
- Practical operation of the DP system
- Position reference systems
- Environment sensors and ancillary equipment
- Power generation and supply and propulsion
- DP operations.

SIMULATOR COURSE (see Annex B)

This course principally involves simulated DP operations including errors, faults and failures, giving the participants the opportunity to apply the lessons learnt in both the Induction Course and subsequent DP sea time days. It covers the following topics:

- Practical operation of the DP system
- DP operations
- DP alarms, warnings and emergency procedures.

COURSE A (see Annex D)

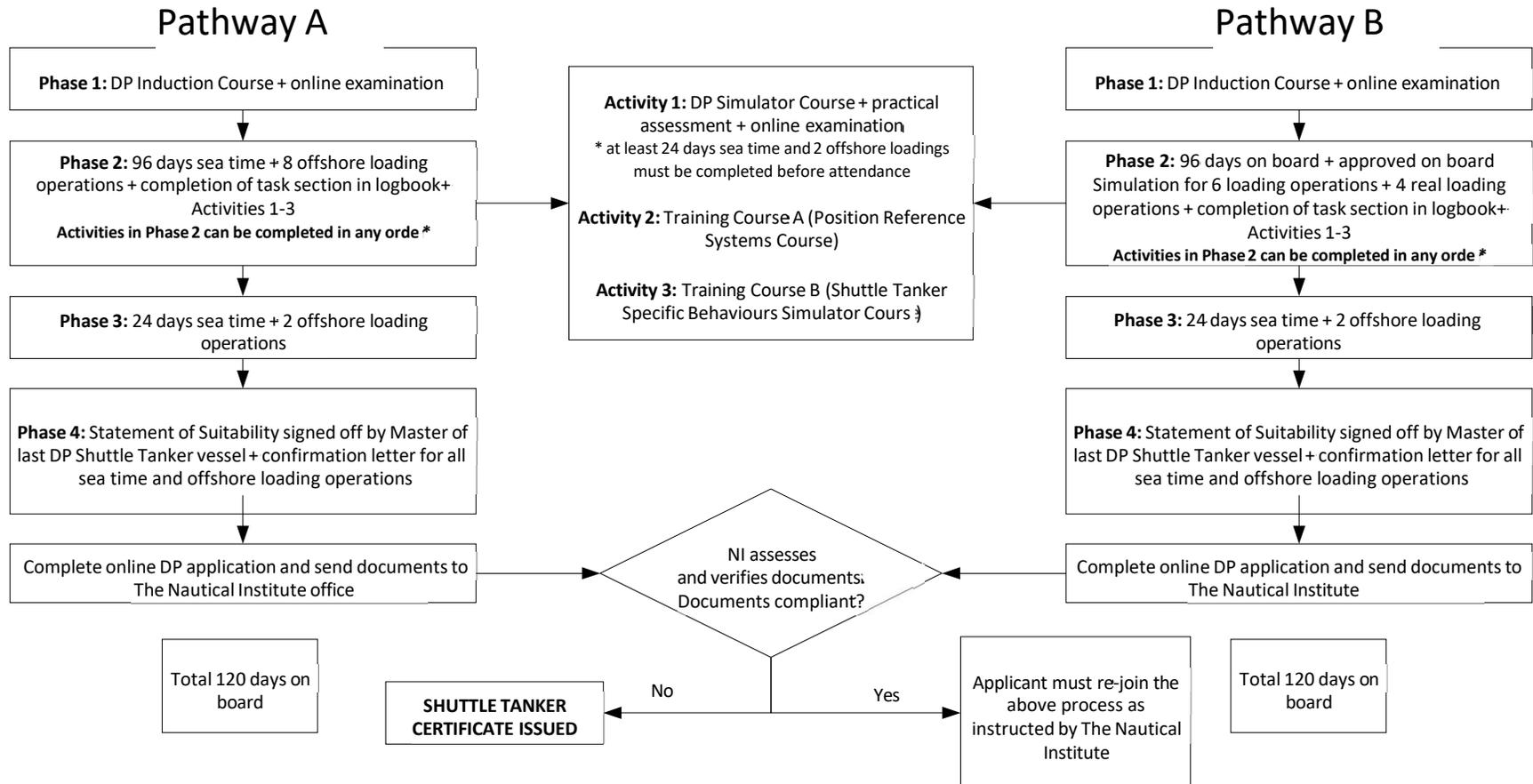
One- or two-day training courses that are provided by either the training centres or the manufacturers of position reference systems (PRS). These courses are recognised, not accredited, by the NI. More information regarding recognition of a course can be found on the website, <https://www.nialexisplatform.org/short-coursesrecognition/recognition/>.

COURSE B (see Annex E)

This is a five-day simulator training course with a minimum of 30 hours of instruction that concentrates on shuttle tanker-specific behaviours and includes exercises for a range of offshore loading installation types. This course is accredited by the NI.

5.3 Shuttle Tanker DP Certificate flowchart

The components of the scheme are set out in the following flowchart, which illustrates the route that must be followed in order to obtain a Shuttle Tanker Certificate (restricted to shuttle tankers).



SECTION 6: Revalidation criteria and conversion routes for DP certificates

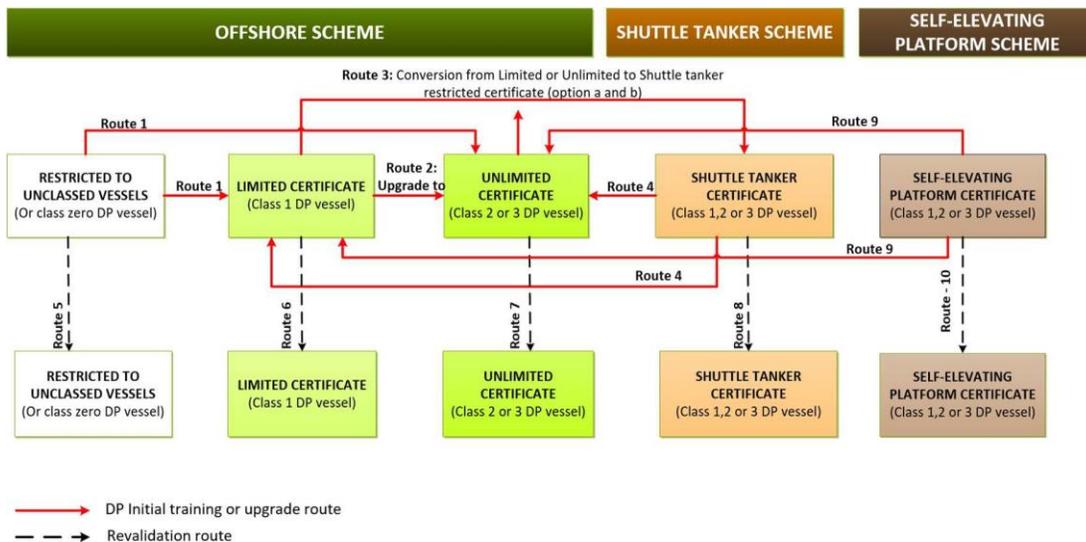


6.1 Validity of DP certificates and revalidation routes

Until 31 December 2014, a DPO's certificate remained valid for as long as the holder regularly operated DP systems. 'Regularly' was defined as a minimum of six months DP watchkeeping experience within the previous five years or work as a DP instructor at an NI-accredited training centre. **Any certificates dated on or before this date that had not been revalidated by 31 December 2019 became invalid from 1 January 2020. Full reference to NI Circular 003/2019 should be made if applicants are unsure how to revalidate from this date.**

From 1 January 2015, all DP Certificates issued by The Nautical Institute must be revalidated every five years. Based on STCW standards and best practices, the NI will consider any **one of the following routes** for revalidation or conversion.

DP INITIAL TRAINING AND REVALIDATION ROUTE



ROUTE 1: CONVERTING FROM UNCLASSED VESSELS TO LIMITED OR UNLIMITED DP CERTIFICATES

To convert from an Unclassed Restricted Certificate to a Limited or Unlimited Certificate, the trainee DPO must obtain at least 120 DP sea time days on board a DP 1 or DP 2/3 classed vessel + complete a new task section + have a Statement of Suitability form signed off by the Master + obtain a confirmation letter from the company. DP 1, 2 or 3 classed sea time used in the application before the issue of the Unclassed Restricted Certificate may be reused in the conversion process provided a minimum of 60 DP sea time days is served on the relevant classed vessel after the issue date of the Unclassed Certificate. This DP sea time must be recorded in the NI DP Logbook in the conversion pages. Active DP sea time must account for 75% of sea time gained; the remaining 25% can be passive DP sea time.

When the trainee applies for the removal of the restriction from the certificate, they must send in to the NI, along with their application, the NI DP Logbook, a new task section (*a printable version can be found on the website*), a new Statement of Suitability form signed by the Master of the last Class 1, 2 or 3 vessel, the original Restricted to Unclassed Vessel Certificate and the confirmation letter from the shipping company for the new sea time experience.

The conversion DP sea time training must be logged in the NI DP Logbook, not in any other logbook. The conversion application must be completed through the online system, using the same candidate customer account number that was issued with his/her first DP Certificate. At the end of this process, the NI will, if appropriate, issue a new Limited or Unlimited Certificate.

The chart below explains how this conversion is calculated by the NI.

Example	Initial application where person gained Unclassified Certificate				New DP time presented for upgrade			How much DP sea time this person has done in total on board classed vessel, summing up time for initial certificate and upgrade? (B+B1+RR+SS)	NI verification of new DP sea time towards Limited/Unlimited certificate	
	DP sea time on <u>Unclassified</u> vessel (A)	DP sea time on <u>classed</u> vessel	DP sea time on <u>classed</u> vessel	Total DP sea time (C)	New DP sea time logged on a classed vessel	New DP sea time logged on a classed vessel	Total DP sea time on classed vessels (E)		Result for a LIMITED Certificate	Result for a FULL Certificate
		DP1 (B) This is equivalent to TCVDP 1	DP2/3 (B1) This is equivalent to TCVDP 23		DP1 (RR)	DP2/3 (SS)			(B+B1) + (RR+SS) >= 120 days. (E) >= 60 days? SS>=60 days? Certificate issued?	a. (B+B1) + (RR+SS) >= 120 days. b. (E) >= 60 days? c. SS>=60 days? d. Certificate issued?
1	90	20	40	150	60	0	60	120	a) Yes b) Yes c) Yes d) Cert. issued	a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) No
2	43	52	40	135	25	20	45	137	a) Yes b) No c) No d) No. Candidate needs another 15 days on classed vessel to reach a minimum of 60 days.	a) Yes b) No c) No. Candidate needs another 40 days on classed vessel to reach a minimum of 60 days required for full certificate

											d) No
3	28	70	30	128	50	28	78	178		a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) Cert issued	a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) No
4	52	28	40	120	24	40	64	132		a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) Cert. issued	a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) No
5	80	22	20	122	18	41	59	101		a) No b) No c) No d) No. Candidate needs 19 day on classed vessel to reach a minimum of 120 days	a) No b) No c) No d) No. Candidate needs 19 day on classed vessel to total the 120 days required, being these 19 days to be done on DP Class 2/3 vessel
6	15	65	55	135	0	81	81	201		a) Yes b) Yes c) Yes d) No	a) Yes b) Yes c) Yes d) Cert. issued

7	22	35	63	120	30	5	35	133	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) No c) No d) No. Candidate needs 25 days on classed vessel to reach a minimum of 60 days as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) No c) No d) No. Candidate needs 55 days on classed vessel to reach a minimum of 60 days as required
8	102	21	0	123	40	10	50	71	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) No b) No c) No d) No. Candidate needs 49 more days on classed vessel to total 120 days and 10 to total a minimum of 60 days required for LIMITED Certificate. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) No b) No c) No d) No. Candidate needs 49 more days on classed vessel to total 120 days and a minimum of 50 days on Class 2/3
9	95	21	39	155	65	0	65	125	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) Cert. issued 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) No
10	32	80	15	127	45	35	75	175	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) Cert. issued 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) No
11	60	25	45	130	40	23	63	133	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) Cert. issued 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) No

12	35	90	80	205	10	0	10	215	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) No c) No d) No. Although the candidate meets the 120 days required, another 50 days on a classed vessel is needed to meet the minimum 60 for upgrade 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) No c) No d) No. Although the candidate meets the 120 days required, another 60 days on classed 2/3 vessel is needed to meet the minimum for upgrade
13	28	70	30	128	20	55	75	175	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) Certificate issued 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Yes b) Yes c) No d) No. candidate needs another five days to reach a minimum of 60 days on Class 2/3 vessel to obtain the full certificate

ROUTE 2: UPGRADE FROM LIMITED TO UNLIMITED CERTIFICATE

To upgrade from a Limited to an Unlimited Certificate, the DPO will need to record in an NI DP Logbook a minimum of 60 DP sea time days on board DP 2 or 3 classed vessels. Any DP sea time logged on board DP 2 or DP 3 classed vessels previously used to obtain a Limited Certificate cannot be counted again, but any other valid sea time on a DP 2 or DP 3 classed vessel will count for the issuance of an Unlimited Certificate. The NI will implement this on a case-by-case basis.

When applying to upgrade to an Unlimited Certificate, the NI will require, along with the application, the logbook, a new Statement of Suitability upgrade form signed by the Master of the last Class 2 or 3 vessel, the original Limited Certificate and the confirmation letter from the shipping company for the new sea time experience.

The online application for an upgrade should be carried out before sending in the documents listed above to the NI. The applicant must use the same candidate customer account number that was issued prior to his/her first DP Certificate. Once all qualification requirements have been confirmed, the NI will issue an Unlimited Certificate.

ROUTE 3: CONVERSION FROM LIMITED OR UNLIMITED TO SHUTTLE TANKER RESTRICTED CERTIFICATE

DPOs who already hold a Limited or Unlimited Certificate issued by The Nautical Institute and who wish to convert to the Shuttle Tanker Restricted Certificate must follow the process set out in Route 8.

ROUTE 4: CONVERSION FROM SHUTTLE TANKER RESTRICTED CERTIFICATE TO OFFSHORE CERTIFICATE (OUTSIDE OF THE REVALIDATION PERIOD)

To convert a DP Certificate from Shuttle Tanker Restricted to an Offshore DP Certificate, applicants need to complete Course C (see Annex C) and 90 DP sea time days; they must also provide a signed Statement of Suitability and a company confirmation letter issued after the date of the Shuttle Tanker Certificate. All tasks in the task section would already have been completed as mandatory during the shuttle tanker training and therefore do not need to be repeated for this conversion.

In this case, the type of DP certificate (Limited or Unlimited) will be determined by the class of the vessel on which the DPO has completed their DP sea time. To gain the Unlimited Certificate, the candidate must have undertaken a minimum of 60 DP sea time days on board a DP 2 or DP 3 classed vessel.

At the time that the candidate is applying for conversion of the certificates, all the sea time in the logbook must have taken place within the past five years. If any sea time phase is out of date, he/she will be required to undertake that part of the training again.

ROUTE 5, 6 and 7: REVALIDATION OF 'UNCLASSED' (ROUTE 5), LIMITED (ROUTE 6) AND UNLIMITED (ROUTE 7) DPO and DPVM CERTIFICATES

Please note: For revalidation, DP sea time for Route 6 and 7 must be obtained on a DP classed vessel unless an Unclassed Certificate is held (Route 5) together with one of the CPD options in the Table 1 revalidation matrix.

The following rules apply to revalidating a DP Certificate (Offshore Scheme) that the DPO currently holds. One of the following criteria should be met:

- If the DPO/DPVM has 150 days or more DP sea-time, within a period of five years, then the requirements in Table 1 apply.

Table 1 Revalidation matrix

1 Jan 2024	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of one year of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2025	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of two years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2026	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of three years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2027	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of four years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2028	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of five years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2029	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of five years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Since from 1 st January 2029, the 12 months latitude to complete the CPD programme does not apply.

- If the DPO/DPVM has 30 days or more DP sea time, the NI DP Refresher Course has to be completed.
- If the DPO/DPVM has NO DP sea-time or less than 30 days, they must complete the NI DP Revalidation Course. When revalidating by means of the Revalidation Course for a second or subsequent time, the DPO must follow the rules as per the Standard with respect to sea time requirements. Refer to Annex F, Section 2.
- If a DP professional has been engaged in an occupation the NI considers to be equivalent to the necessary sea service (ie DP surveyor, DP consultant, DP auditor, DP superintendent, DP supervisor), revalidation of his/her DP Certificate will require a minimum of 150 days in the activity claimed in the preceding five years. **After this**, the requirements in Table 1 apply.
- If a DPO/DPVM is an NI-approved instructor, revalidation of his/her DP Certificate will require a minimum of 150 days in the activity claimed in the preceding five years **in addition to sitting the NI online exam**.
- The Nautical Institute may also consider any other equivalent activities on a case by- case basis. These might include writing FMEAs and other DP documents, participating in proving/annual trials, undertaking suitability surveys on DP vessels or carrying out OVID inspections with a DP variant.

In the case of a DP Instructor, proof of these activities must be provided in a confirmation letter signed by an accredited training centre.

In the case of a DP superintendent, DP consultant or DP supervisor, the letter must be signed by the operations manager of the vessel where the person has performed the work/activity or, in the case of a DP auditor, by NI's authorised person. Unless an Unclassed Certificate is held, the sea time for this route must be obtained on a classed vessel.

If the applicant has had a mix of experience in the past five years that involves DP activities and DP sea time days, this experience will be totalled, e.g., 20 days DP activities and 130 DP sea time days will equal the required 150 days. However, if the total experience is less than 150 days then the criteria above (for the DPO) must be met. Masters holding a DP Certificate can claim for the DP sea time due to their direct responsibility for, and supervision of, DP operations. In this case, the DP sea time must be recorded in the NI or IMCA logbook, signed and stamped as the DP Master.

NOTE: Passive DP sea time will not be accepted for revalidation purposes as it can only be counted for initial training in the task section of the logbook.

NOTE: 'NOTE: Holders of non-NI DPO Certificates (such as those issued by **NMD, DNV and OSVDPA**) are currently eligible to convert to an NI DPO Certificate. The requirement for conversion is the same as for revalidating an NI DP certificate, the applicant will need to have completed a minimum of 150 DP days within the preceding 5 years and be able to provide DP sea time confirmation letters for all eligible sea time before making an online application.'

Similarly, if a candidate is part of the way through completing their training with a non-NI certification body but wishes to complete their training on an NI scheme, this will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

Prospective applicants who have specific questions about their eligibility should contact the NI directly for advice.

POSITION MOORING (POSMOOR) or THRUSTER-ASSISTED MOORING (TAM): The time on board a vessel with the classification POSITION MOORING or THRUSTER-ASSISTED MOORING (TAM) and DP class notation can be counted towards the DP sea time obtained for revalidation purposes. DP seatime can be claimed on board a POSMOOR/TAM DP vessel only when the vessel does not have a mooring system deployed. The company DP sea time confirmation letter must confirm that the time was completed when the vessel did not have a mooring system deployed. If applicable, the NI reserves the right to ask for future and more detailed information, such as deck log.

ROUTE 8: REVALIDATION OF SHUTTLE TANKER RESTRICTED CERTIFICATES

Revalidation of Shuttle Tanker DPO Certificates must satisfy the following criteria:

- Participation in at least 18 offshore loading operations and one set of annual trials (or FMEA) within a five-year period, plus completion of the applicable option in Table 1.
- Participation in less than 18 offshore loading operations but more than six within the past five years, Course B must be completed, followed by Phases 3 and 4 of the Shuttle Tanker Scheme and passing the NI Revalidation Course online exam.
- If fewer than six offshore loading operations have been conducted in the five-year period, the DPO should restart the Shuttle Tanker Scheme process at Phase 2 and complete all subsequent phases. Due to conversion, 24 days sea time can be deducted from the requirements of Phase 2, but all offshore loading operations in Pathway A or B must be completed.
- Where these revalidation requirements specify participation in annual trials or an FMEA test within a five-year period, in exceptional circumstances this requirement may be fulfilled by participation in an additional Simulator Course (such as Offshore Loading Phase 3) in lieu of the trials, completed during this five-year period.

ROUTE 9: CONVERSION FROM RESTRICTED SELF-ELEVATING PLATFORM CERTIFICATE TO THE OFFSHORE CERTIFICATE

To convert from a Restricted Self-Elevating Platform DP Certificate to an Offshore DP Certificate, applicants need to complete 60 DP sea time days and provide a new Statement of Suitability form signed off after the DP sea time dates have been completed and after the issue date of the Restricted Self-Elevating Platform DP Certificate. A company confirmation letter will also be required. The tasks do not need to be repeated.

The type of DP certificate will be determined by the class of the vessel on which the DP operator has completed the DP sea time days. This means that a Limited or Unlimited Certificate may be issued. In order to gain the Unlimited DP Certificate, the candidate must have undertaken the 60 DP sea time days on board a DP 2 or DP 3 classed vessel. If the time is completed on board a DP1 classed vessel, a Limited DP Certificate will be issued.

At the time the candidate applies for the conversion of the certificate, all the DP sea time days in the logbook to be used towards the **Table 1 Revalidation Matrix** conversion must have been gained within the past five years. However, provided the application is made within three months of the date of signing of the Statement of Suitability, the five years can be counted up to that date of signing.

ROUTE 10: REVALIDATION OF RESTRICTED SELF-ELEVATING PLATFORM CERTIFICATES

To revalidate a Restricted Self-Elevating Platform Certificate, applicants need to complete a minimum of 40 DP operations in addition to completing the applicable option in Table 2. The option to complete a Revalidation Course is currently under review.

Table 2 Revalidation matrix

1 Jan 2024	The holder of a Restricted Self-Elevating Platform Certificate with 40 DP operations who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of one year of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2025	The holder of a Restricted Self-Elevating Platform Certificate with 40 DP operations who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of two years of a NI-approved CPD programme or complete a NI DP Refresher course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2026	The holder of a Restricted Self-Elevating Platform Certificate with 40 DP operations who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of three years of a NI-approved CPD programme or complete a NI DP Refresher course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2027	The holder of a Restricted Self-Elevating Platform Certificate with 40 operations who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of four years of a NI-approved CPD programme or complete a NI DP Refresher course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2028	The holder of a Restricted Self-Elevating Platform Certificate with 40 DP operations who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of five years of a NI approved CPD programme or complete a NI DP Refresher course.

	Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2029	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of five years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Since from 1 st January 2029, the 12 months latitude to complete the CPD programme does not apply.

6.2 Converting and revalidating from 1 January 2015 while working on shuttle tankers

Those issued with a Limited or Unlimited Certificate by the NI and who do not have sufficient DP sea time days to revalidate their certificates at the end of the five-year period may choose to have their certificate revalidated as a Shuttle Tanker Restricted Certificate. The conditions of Route 8 will apply. Those converting from the Offshore Certificate to Shuttle Tanker Certificate will require a signed Statement of Suitability.

Where these revalidation requirements specify participation in annual trials or a FMEA test within a five-year period, in exceptional circumstances this requirement may be fulfilled by participation in an additional Simulator Course (such as Offshore Loading Phase 3) in lieu of the trials, completed during this five-year period.

All offshore loading operations, FMEA and trials must be confirmed by the company through a confirmation letter. The confirmation letter must be signed by the operations manager or a person of equivalent position.

NOTES: The DP Certificate issued during revalidation will be of the same type as the certificate initially issued, irrespective of the class of the vessel the candidate has served on within the past five years.

Candidates wishing to remove the limitation on their certificates or who wish to change to the Shuttle Tanker Scheme should take the conversion route to obtain a new certificate from the NI.

FOR OFFSHORE CERTIFICATE REVALIDATIONS

Candidates are required to apply for revalidation of their DP Certificates in the same month that the original certificate was issued (as shown on the DP Certificate). The NI will consider extenuating circumstances on a case-by-case basis.

IMCA logbooks can be used towards revalidation only. The hours recorded in an individual's IMCA logbook will be divided by two to arrive at the number of DP days that the person has obtained in the past five years, as shown in the formula below:

(Total number of hours for each embark / 2h) =< X
where X cannot be more than the number of days
embarked.

The 2 hours comes from the definition of DP sea time for the offshore industry and applies to all time logged on or after 1 January 2015.



Annex A

DP Induction Course

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP INDUCTION COURSE

© The Nautical Institute 2023
200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817
www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI DP Induction Course		
Title NI DP Induction Course	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v1 (January 2022)	New content v1 (January 2023)

Contents

1. Introduction	48
2. Minimum Entry Qualification Requirements	48
3. Number of Hours	48
4. Ratio of Students/Instructors/Equipment	48
5. Delivery Method	49
6. Course Aims	49
7. Course Objectives	49
8. Course Assessment	53
9. Online Assessment	53
10. Practical Assessment	53
11. Blended Learning For Induction Course Only	53
12. Online Induction Course Only (Theory Part)	54

1. INTRODUCTION

The list of training centres approved for the delivery of these courses may be found on The Nautical Institute's (the NI) website.

The following courses cannot be taken in consecutive weeks (back-to-back) unless they are being repeated. This is because the DP sea time after each course gives the prospective DPO the opportunity to reinforce, consolidate and put into practice skills learned during the courses.

Induction and Simulator Courses must be undertaken within five years of the date of the application and submission of documents to the NI. In the event that any of these courses fall outside of the five-year period, the trainee will be required to repeat the expired course.

2. MINIMUM ENTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

On successful completion of both the Induction Course and Induction online exam, the trainee DPO will be issued with a NI DP logbook in which the courses, DP sea time, tasks and the Statement of Suitability are recorded. The subsequent DP sea time following the Induction Course provides the opportunity to complete the task sections in the logbook.

The new grey logbook is issued to trainee DPOs that started their training after 1st January 2015. Trainee DPOs who have entered into the training scheme before this date or are repeating the Induction Course shall continue to use their existing logbooks. Trainee DPOs who have transferred to the new offshore scheme will also be issued with a grey logbook

Trainee DPOs attending an Induction Course after 1st January 2015 will only be permitted to count DP sea time gained after attending the course. Applications received at the NI under the old scheme rules will be evaluated and honoured by the previous regulation.

3. NUMBER OF HOURS

A minimum of 28 hours teaching time is required for this course; if additional time is required to run exams or deal with paperwork, this time shall be added to the 28 hours. It is expected that 80% of the time is spent on teaching DP theory and 20% on practical exercises. Usually the Induction Course is delivered over four or five days. There is an option to deliver the course over a maximum six-week period, with instruction taking place on a given day in each of those weeks. This option is particularly suited to cadet training institutions as it allows the training to fit into the already existing class schedule. In all other aspects the course must conform to all other training scheme standards.

4. RATIO OF STUDENTS/INSTRUCTORS/EQUIPMENT

The number of students attending the Induction Course must be regulated so that each student obtains sufficient 'hands-on' experience of operating the system to ensure adequate familiarisation with the principles of DP operation. In order to achieve this, the NI allows a maximum of eight students per class being taught by one instructor. If more than eight students are enrolled on the course, a second instructor will be required to assist with practical exercises. In this case, the name and signature of the second instructor should be reflected in the attendance list of the course and practical exercises.

Centres are allowed to seat two students per DP console, which is sufficient to reconcile the availability of equipment and the need to provide sufficient hands-on experience. If this is the case, the ratio for the Induction Course is one instructor to eight students and four DP consoles.

5. DELIVERY METHOD

At the start of the Induction Course the NI DP Operator training scheme is to be outlined, including the need to maintain the logbook and the procedure for obtaining a DP Operator Certificate.

The Induction Course is predominantly theory-based with guided practical exercises that introduce the trainee to various DP operational modes. The topics to be covered on the Induction Course are to include:

- 5.1. General principles of dynamic positioning.
- 5.2. The elements of a DP system:
 - (i) Computers and control elements
 - (ii) Position reference systems
 - (iii) Heading reference systems
 - (iv) Wind sensors and other environment reference systems
 - (v) Power generation elements. The UPS
 - (vi) Thrusters and manoeuvring systems.
- 5.3. Position reference systems and other sensors; their principles of operation, their use, operational merits and limitations.
- 5.4. Practical demonstration and operation of a typical DP system.
- 5.5. DP vessel operations: hazards associated with certain types of operation, e.g. shallow water and strong tides.
- 5.6. Power generation, distribution and management.
- 5.7. DP watch keeping and watch handover procedures, documentation and communications.

The practical element of this course requires the use of a DP system installed in the training centre and delivered with an adequate level of simulation. This equipment must meet the requirements set out in Annex 5 of the Accreditation and Certification Scheme Standard Volume 2. The minimum equipment required for the Induction Course is Class C simulators.

6. COURSE AIMS

At the end of the course the student should:

- a. Have acquired knowledge of the principles of DP.
- b. Have acquired a basic understanding of how to set up a DP system.
- c. Have an understanding of the practical operation of associated equipment, including position reference systems.
- d. Be able to recognise the various alarm, warning and information messages.
- e. Be able to relate the DP installation to the ship system, including (but not limited to) power supply, manoeuvring facility, available position reference systems and nature of work.
- f. Be able to relate DP operations to the existing environmental conditions of wind, sea state, current/tidal stream and vessel movement.

7. COURSE OBJECTIVES

The following is a list of the objectives to be attained by trainee DPOs by the successful completion of the Induction Course.

By the completion of the training session or period for the DP control station the trainee should be able to:

- 7.1. Define Dynamic Positioning.
- 7.2. Explain the need for Dynamic Positioning in various types of vessel.
- 7.3. Describe the six freedoms of movement of a vessel.
- 7.4. State which of the six freedoms of movement are controlled under DP and which are monitored.

- 7.5. Describe the following aids to manoeuvring commonly fitted to DP vessels, including their practical and operational advantages and disadvantages: fixed and controllable-pitch propellers, azimuth thrusters, Azipod thrusters and tunnel thrusters.
- 7.6. List the seven main components of a DP system; DP Operator, DP computer (or controller), DP Operator station, position reference systems, sensors, power supply and thrusters.
- 7.7. Describe the various modes of DP operation, including manual control, semiautomatic control and automatic control. In addition, describe the following common specialist functions: ROV follow (follow sub), follow target, track follow (auto track), minimum power (weathervane) and riser angle mode.
- 7.8. Discuss the concept of mathematical modelling of vessel behaviour characteristics and appreciate the advantages and limitations/disadvantages of this technique.
- 7.9. Outline the power requirements of a DP vessel system and describe a typical diesel-electric power installation.
- 7.10. Describe the following position reference systems commonly associated with DP installations: INS, Differential GNSS, hydro acoustic, taut wire, Artemis, FMCW Radar and laser-based systems.
- 7.11. Describe the following sensors associated with DP installations: vertical reference sensor/unit, motion reference unit, gyro compass, wind sensor (anemometer) and manual draught input sensor.
- 7.12. Describe the concept of centre of rotation and the provision of alternative centres of rotation.
- 7.13. Describe consequence analysis as carried out by a Dynamic Positioning system.

By the completion of the training session or period, for the power generation and management the trainee should be able to:

- 7.14. Describe the power generation and distribution arrangements in a typical diesel-electric DP vessel, with particular reference to system redundancy as described in IMO MSC Circ. 645, 1580 and vessel FMEA.
- 7.15. Describe the power supply and distribution arrangements in a typical hybrid diesel/diesel-electric DP vessel. (Main CPP or Az drive which are direct drive)
- 7.16. Recognise the power requirements of DP vessels and explain the concept of available power and spinning reserve in worst case failure.
- 7.17. Describe the functions of a power management system as installed on Class 2 and Class 3 DP vessels.
- 7.18. Describe the provision of uninterruptible power supply to the DP system, with particular reference to power shortages, failures and system redundancy.

By the completion of the training session or period for the propulsion units the trainee should be able to:

- 7.19. Describe the following types of propulsion system commonly installed in DP equipped vessels: main propellers and rudders, azimuth thrusters, Azipod thrusters and tunnel thrusters, Waterjet, Voith Schnieder, etc.
- 7.20. Describe the importance of monitoring the displayed values of setpoint and feedback data for thruster and propeller rpm, pitch and/or azimuth.
- 7.21. Describe the operational characteristics and common failure modes of the different types of propulsion systems as described in 19 above.

By the completion of the training session or period for the position reference systems (PRS) the trainee should be able to:

- 7.22. Describe the operation of hydroacoustic position reference (HPR) systems.
- 7.23. Describe the principles of position-fixing using underwater acoustic systems working in SSBL/USBL, LBL and SBL modes.
- 7.24. Describe the various types of hydroacoustic beacon: transponder, responder and pinger/Beacon.

- 7.25. Describe the layout of a typical Hydroacoustic system including operator station, transceiver, transducer pole and transducer.
- 7.26. List the operational advantages and limitations of acoustic systems as a position reference for DP.
- 7.27. Describe the principle and operation of the Artemis position reference system.
- 7.28. List the operational advantages and limitations of the Artemis position reference system.
- 7.29. List the different types of taut wire position reference system: vertical lightweight, vertical deep water, vertical moon pool, horizontal and horizontal gangway.
- 7.30. Describe the display of taut wire reference data in the DP system.
- 7.31. Describe the principle of position reference using the taut wire system.
- 7.32. List the advantages and limitations of the taut wire position reference systems.
- 7.33. Describe the principles of the Differential GNSS (DGNSS) system.
- 7.34. Outline the operation of a typical commercial DGNSS network where corrections are delivered by satellite communications.
- 7.35. List the sources of error and inaccuracy associated with the DGNSS system, describing the effects on the quality of positioning.
- 7.36. List the available quality data associated with the DGNSS system.
- 7.37. List the advantages and limitations of the DGNSS system when compared with other PRS.
- 7.38. Describe the principles used in relative DGNSS systems.
- 7.39. Describe the principles of position reference using laser-based systems.
- 7.40. Outline the method of setting up a laser system to provide best position information.
- 7.41. List the advantages and limitations associated with a laser-based PRS.
- 7.42. Describe the principles of position reference using FMCW Radar-based systems.
- 7.43. List the advantages and limitations associated with FMCW Radar-based PRS.
- 7.44. Describe the principle of Inertial Navigation (INS) and the methods of using INS to enhance existing PRS performance.
- 7.45. Discuss the relative accuracy and reliability of the aforementioned PRS, together with the methods used to apply weighting and pooling and voting when more than one PRS is used. Median rejection of PRS when three or more are used and the importance of monitoring the position reference page.
- 7.46. Describe other PRS that may be used in conjunction with a DP system.

By the completion of the training session or period for the heading and motion reference systems the trainee should be able to:

- 7.47. Describe the function of gyro compasses and their redundancy within a DP system.
- 7.48. Describe how to obtain pitch, roll and heave information for input into a DP system.
- 7.49. Describe the reason for inputting pitch, roll and heave into a DP system.

By the completion of the training session or period for the environmental reference systems the trainee should be able to:

- 7.50. Describe the provision of wind sensors within the DP system.
- 7.51. Describe the wind feed-forward facility and its importance within the DP system.
- 7.52. Recognise the limitations of wind sensor inputs. Explain the reasons for and the consequences of deselecting wind sensor inputs.
- 7.53. Describe the method by which the DP system determines the value for DP current or Sea Force (the residual error resulting from unmeasured errors & unmeasured forces acting on the vessel).
- 7.54. List the reasons for discrepancy between the displayed value of DP current (or Sea Force) on the DP system and the true current or tidal stream value.

By the completion of the training session or period for the external force reference systems the trainee should be able to:

- 7.55. Describe the use of external force reference systems such as hawser tension, plough cable tension and pipe tension monitoring.

By the completion of the training session or period for the DP operations the trainee should be able to:

- 7.56. Describe the procedures to be followed when approaching a worksite and transferring from conventional navigation to DP control.
- 7.57. Discuss the need for completing pre-DP and other checklists prior to and during DP operations.
- 7.58. Explain the need for keeping logbook records of all DP operations, failures and incidents.
- 7.59. Explain the need for keeping records of operation, maintenance and repairs of DP and ancillary equipment.
- 7.60. Describe the need for effective communications during the conduct of DP operations.
- 7.61. Outline the procedures to be followed by the DPO when taking over the control of the vessel's positioning and manoeuvring.
- 7.62. Describe the structure of alarm / warning and information messages provided on the DP system displays and on the DP printer.
- 7.63. Recognise the alarms/warnings associated with loss of redundancy after worst case failure and the possible loss of heading or position if another failure occurs after a worst case failure (part loss of some thrusters and power) and catastrophic failure (loss of heading and/or position control). ASOG, TAM and CAM.
- 7.64. Outline the navigational projections, spheroids and datums that may be used in operations involving Dynamic Positioning.
- 7.65. Explain the use of worksite diagrams using Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinates.
- 7.66. Explain the need for planning DP operations, including emergency and contingency situations ASOG, TAM and CAM.
- 7.67. List the various following providers of documents containing statutory requirements and guidance relating to DP operations, including:
 - 7.68. IMO (including IMO MSC/Circ. 645 of 1994 and 1580 of 2017 Guidelines for Vessels with Dynamic Positioning Systems)
 - 7.69. Classification society DP rules (example from classification society which is member of IACS)
 - 7.70. International Marine Contractors Association (IMCA)
 - 7.71. Marine Technology Society (MTS)Explain the purpose of documentation associated with DP operations, such as DP operations manuals, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) and capability plots. ASOG, TAM and CAM. Describe the IMO (DP) equipment classes and their application, with reference to the IMO *Guidelines for Vessels with DP Systems*. Understand that classification societies use either numbers (e.g. ABS DPS-2) or letters (e.g. Lloyd's Register DP (AA) to denote the DP Class allocated to the vessel. Describe in outline the DP operations conducted by the following vessel types:
 - 7.72. Diving and underwater support vessels
 - 7.73. Drilling ships and semi-submersibles
 - 7.74. Cable lay and repair vessels
 - 7.75. Pipelay vessels
 - 7.76. Rock dumping and dredging vessels
 - 7.77. Shuttle tanker and FPSO/FSO operations
 - 7.78. Flotel (accommodation) vessels
 - 7.79. Crane barges and construction vessels
 - 7.80. Anchor-handling and platform supply vessels
 - 7.81. Cruise ships and luxury yachts
 - 7.82. State and describe the hazards associated with DP operations conducted in areas of shallow water and/or strong tidal conditions.
 - 7.83. Describe the hazards associated with DP operations in very deep water.

By the completion of the training session or period for the practical operation of a DP system the trainee should be able to:

- 7.84 Demonstrate the use of the joystick to manoeuvre the vessel and bring the vessel to a stop in a seamanlike manner.
- 7.85 Demonstrate the correct procedure for setting up the DP system in both manual and automatic modes.
- 7.86 Demonstrate position and heading change manoeuvres, using both automatic and manual DP facilities.
- 7.87 Demonstrate the use of commonly provided functions on the DP control panel. As a minimum, including Gain, Fixed Azimuth mode and Thruster bias.
- 7.88 Demonstrate the use of common modes found on a DP system, as a minimum Track Follow, Minimum Power and ROV Follow.

8. COURSE ASSESSMENT

Not Applicable

9. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

In order to be awarded a certificate of completion for the Induction Course the trainee must pass an online assessment at the training centre. The exam is composed of multiple choice questions and shall be completed in 1 hour 15 minutes. The online assessment will consist of 40 questions and shall be completed with a pass mark of 70%.

Students who fail at the first attempt are allowed to have another two attempts within six months of the first attempt; however, the second attempt must be undertaken within 96 hours of the first attempt. Failing these three initial attempts, the student is required to repeat the Induction Course and undertake the assessment again.

On successful completion of the Induction Course and online assessment, the trainee Dynamic Positioning Operator will be issued with a Nautical Institute Dynamic Positioning Operator's logbook in which his/her courses, DP sea time, task completion and Statement of Suitability as a DPO are recorded.

10. PRACTICAL ASSESSMENT

Not applicable

11. BLENDED LEARNING FOR INDUCTION COURSE ONLY

Definitions:

- CBT: a computer course that completely replaces face-to-face training.
- Blended learning: a methodology that combines CBT with face-to-face and/or practical training.

CBT courses are not recommended for DP courses because the trainee DPO must learn skills that cannot be taught via computer only, including communication, delegation and emergency response. Trainee DP Operators learn from each other during a face-to-face course as they participate in discussions and debrief after exercises.

Blended learning can be accepted as a delivery method for the DP Induction Course only, not the Simulator Course. CBT may be used to deliver the theoretical portion of the Induction Course after which a minimum of two and a half days will be required in a traditional class. At least two full days should be used for exercises, not theory, and a half day should be used to administer the external online assessment.

The course must comply with the aims and objectives and shall be assessed by the NI on a case by case basis.

During the CBT portion of the course, computer assessments for each unit of material covered will be administered to verify that the trainee understands that material. The pass mark will be 70% for these interim assessments. Once the CBT is complete, the training centre shall administer a further assessment to ensure that the trainee is ready for the practical portion of the course and is at a level of understanding aligned with other trainees in the class.

One instructor should be allocated to support each student and support should be given seven days a week and cover all parts of the world.

Training centres are entitled to set appropriate limits on the time that trainees may allow to elapse between the remote and classroom portions of their training, if they wish. However, these must be aligned with their own terms of reference and be set with fair consideration for the professional restrictions of seafaring DPOs.

12. ONLINE INDUCTION COURSE (THEORY PART)

The NI DP Induction Course comprises 80% of theory and 20% practical training.

The training centres that wish to deliver the induction course's online theory, must seek and receive approval from The Nautical Institute.

Documentation to submit to The Nautical Institute for approval:

1. Details of the instructors to be used for online learning.
2. Timetable for online course delivery and practical training at the training centre.
3. Details of how learning materials will be provided to the candidates.
4. Details of the delivery methodology, including online learning platforms.
5. Details of the required equipment needed by the trainee DPO at the remote location.
6. Confirmation of the arrangements for the training and assessment before commencement of practical training of Induction course at the training centre.

The trainee DPO must return to the training centre within three months after completion of the online theory lessons to complete the induction course in its entirety. The course certificate and logbook should be handed to the candidate upon completing the course and passing an online exam.

The NI will not accept any sea-time until the candidate completes the induction course theory, practical and online exam.

The Nautical Institute reserves the rights to review the online course delivery from time to time. If the online course delivery is found to be sub-standard, The NI will revoke the approval.

LESSON PLAN No.1

(Sample)

Course Title	Dynamic Positioning (Induction)	
Day and Session	Day 1 - Session 1	
Topic/Lesson	Introduction to the concept of DP	
Aims	1. To introduce Dynamic Positioning concept in floating vessels 2. To describe the utility of DP in different type of vessels 3. To describe the seven elements of DP 4. To introduce six degrees of freedom in DP	
Objectives	On completion of this session the participants will have gained: (a). An understanding of concept of DP and how it helps different types of vessels in performing their operation. (b). An insight of the seven components of DP and how each component plays its part in DP operation. (c). An understanding of six degrees of freedom and how DP controls three degrees of freedom to maintain vessel position.	
Total Time	Content / Activity	Training Aids
1 hr	Introduction to the concept of DP	
15 mins	<u>Specific Content of the Lesson:</u> 1. Concept of Dynamic Positioning: (a). Definition of DP (b). Brief background of need to have DP for offshore operations (c). What type of vessels use DP system	1. Film/video 2. Projector and Power Point Presentation No.1 3. White board and marker pen 4. DP simulator
20 mins	2. The seven components of DP, their brief description and role in DP operation: (a). Operator (b). HMI – Human Machine Interface. DP Console and Independent Joystick (c). DP Controller (d). Sensors (e). Position Reference Systems (f). Power Plant (g). Thrusters	1. Projector and Power Point Presentation No. 2 2. White board and marker pen 3. Sensor models 4. PRS models 5. DP simulator
20 mins	3. The six degrees of freedom of a vessel: (a). Describe roll, pitch, heave, surge, sway and Yaw movements of the floating vessel (b). Explain that only surge, sway and yaw can be controlled by DP by use of sensors, PRSs and thrusters (c). Briefly explain through line diagrams on how surge, sway and yaw are controlled by DP	1. Film/video 2. Projector and Power Point Presentation No. 3 3. White board and marker pen 4. DP vessel model
05 mins	4. Summing up and question / answers	As required



Annex B

DP Simulator Course

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP SIMULATOR COURSE

© The Nautical Institute 2023

200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom

Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817

www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI DP Simulator Course		
Title NI DP Simulator Course	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v2 (January 2022)	New content v1 (January 2023)
65	Failure Mode Checklist		The Failure Mode Checklist amendments

Contents

1. Introduction	60
2. Minimum Entry Qualification Requirements	60
3. Number of Hours	60
4. Ratio of Students/Instructors/Equipment	60
5. Delivery Method	60
6. Course Aims	61
7. Course Objectives	62
8. Course Assessment	64
9. Online Assessment	64
10. Practical Assessment	64
11. Failure Mode Checklist	65
12. Summary Of Simulation, Form	75
13. Recording Student Performance, Form	76
14. DP Set-up Practical Assessment Skills Form (Assessor)	77

1. INTRODUCTION

DP Simulator Course has a three part assessment process:

- 1.1. DP Set Up Practical Assessment, undertaken as course progresses. This must be successfully completed and competence to perform tasks is a requirement to pass the course.
- 1.2. Online Exam at completion of course which needs to be passed.
- 1.3. Formative Assessment, which is a feedback given to students throughout the course. This may vary from centre to centre but should consist of:
 - (i) briefing, consisting of Scenario Objects (SMART) and feedback criteria (how to measure a participants obtaining a correct level)
 - (ii) debriefing, consisting of two parts, feedback from students and feedback from the instructor, specifically after simulator exercises.

The debriefing note from the instructor must be retained for a period of at least three years.

2. MINIMUM ENTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

The course is a key element of the DPO training programme. As such participants will have completed the Induction Course and gained the specified experience before enrolment.

3. NUMBER OF HOURS

A minimum of 28 hours teaching time is required for this course; if additional time is required to deal with paperwork or administer exams this time shall be added to the 28 hours. It is suggested that a split of 30% of the course time is spent on theory and 70% on practical exercises (including the time spent on briefing and debriefing).

4. RATIO OF STUDENTS/INSTRUCTORS/EQUIPMENT

The number of students attending the Simulator Course must be regulated so that each student obtains sufficient hands-on experience of operating the system when having to react to various failure scenarios. In order to achieve this, the NI allows a maximum ratio of four students taught by one instructor per one Class B or A Simulator.

By exception, and where justified, a ratio of five or six students may be considered at the discretion of the NI's Accreditation Team, based on the number of simulators in place, rotation of students and the use of the training methodology in place.

When two simulator systems are available in a training centre, "best practice" is to keep each trainee on the same simulator throughout the Simulator Course.

5. DELIVERY METHOD

The training will be predominantly practical/operational in nature. Exercises and case studies will be carried out in a facility that meets the provisions set out in the document NI DP Simulator specification (Annex 5 of the Accreditation and Certification Standard Volume 2).

In addition to exercise briefing/debriefing, students will be given an opportunity to give feedback on their training needs during classroom tuition.

This course is intended for those who have completed the Induction Course and a minimum of 60 DP sea time days. These students should already have a good grounding in the practice and principles of dynamic positioning through their experiences in class and at sea.

The DP Simulator Course is intended to build on that experience and to provide realistic DP-based scenario work. These scenarios should provide the opportunity to practice all aspects of the planning and conduct of typical DP operations, including the handling of emergencies. Particular emphasis should be placed upon teamwork within the role-play scenarios.

A typical installation will consist of a redundant DP system interfaced with a simulator system coordinated by the instructor's input. Other facilities will include a realistic communications suite, suitable chartroom facilities and support documentation.

DP scenarios must closely match the situation on board a vessel. Communications form an important part of any DP situation; so they must be adequately simulated in any training facility, with several different means of communication between the instructor station and the DPO/trainee facility. Communications to be simulated include:

- VHF on emergency and working channels. A useful addition is a listing of the various channels monitored by the various installations and vessels taking part in the simulations.
- Talk-back to areas such as ROV control, dive control.
- Telephone to areas such as the MCR.
- DP status alarms (red, amber, blue/ white and green traffic lights).
- DP status board. This facility may form part of a planned crisis; the instructor may mark up the status board incorrectly at the beginning of a scenario to discover if the trainees are completing their checklists meticulously.

The training establishment must provide materials to support the hardware simulator facility. This will mainly consist of relevant documentation which will include:

- Plans and drawings showing the oilfield or operating area used in the simulations.
- Drawings of the various installations within the operating areas, together with any specifications or other necessary details.
- Drawings and data sheets relating to the vessel or vessels under simulation; these drawings to include DP capability plots.
- Operational instructions, checklists and standing orders associated with the vessel or vessels.
- A set of scenario information sheets. Each scenario should be designed to provide at least one specific, planned crisis or problem for the trainees to react to. Other problem areas should be kept in hand for use in the event of the trainees coping with the primary planned crisis in short order.

Training centres must ensure all sources of time keeping are aligned and synchronised. Especially for the recording of time during DP Simulator based exercises.

6. COURSE AIMS

On completion of the Simulator Course the student should be able to:

- 6.1. Carry out operational planning, risk assessment and hazard identification tasks
- 6.2. Set up the DP system for a particular task
- 6.3. Operate the communications
- 6.4. Analyse the trends
- 6.5. Discuss systems failures
- 6.6. Decide on courses of action because of systems failures
- 6.7. React to alarms and printer readout
- 6.8. Initiate DP Alert status alarms
- 6.9. React to all events occurring
- 6.10. Operate the desk under normal and pressured conditions
- 6.11. Practice effective teamwork
- 6.12. Apply the lessons learned to date.
- 6.13. ASOGs

7. COURSE OBJECTIVES
OPERATION OF A DP SYSTEM

7.1. Demonstrate ability through participation in exercises to set up, operate and carry out maneuvers using the DP system under the following control modes:

Manual mode	Joystick control of surge, sway and yaw
Mixed manual/automatic mode	Automatic control of yaw with joystick control of surge and sway Automatic control of surge and sway with joystick control of yaw
Automatic mode	Automatic control of surge, sway and yaw

7.2. Demonstrate ability through group exercises to set up, operate and carry out maneuvers using the DP system under the following control modes:

Follow-target mode	ROV follow and working other DP vessels
Track follow mode	

7.3. Demonstrate within the DP Simulator the operation of position reference systems, sensors and peripheral equipment associated with the DP system.

7.4. Understand the operation of heading modes where the DP system continuously determines and automatically sets vessel heading to minimize power/thrust requirements.

DP OPERATION

7.5. Interpret vessel plans and specifications.

- (i) Interpret information found on paper or electronic field charts relevant to the planning and conduct of DP operations.

7.6. Using vessel and other data such as capability plots (paper or electronic), footprint plots to assess the capability of the vessel to complete successfully any proposed operation without a loss of position after worst case failure.

7.6.1 Review power management systems considering the following:

- (i) Open and closed tie breaker
- (ii) Number of generators online
- (iii) Available Power/Spinning reserve
- (iv) Preferential tripping- /Load sharing
- (v) Redundancy
- (vi) Concept of Auto blackout recovery
- (vii) How power management systems prevent blackouts
- (viii) Power management with the DP program

7.6.2 Review FMEA and Annual DP Trials:

- (i) Define the two main sections of an FMEA
- (ii) Explain reason why Class 2 and 3 vessel need FMEA
- (iii) Identify Worst Case Failure
- (iv) Explain the reason for using the FMEA to develop Activity Specific Operation Guidelines (ASOG)
- (v) Identify and understand the reason for annual DP trials

- 7.7 Carry out a risk assessment exercise on proposed operations and determine the level of redundancy appropriate.
 - 7.7.1 Understand a DP alert table or ASOG, what will trigger a change of status and the action required
 - 7.7.2 Understand a CAM and TAM table and decide on which mode to operate under, based on a risk assessment of proposed operations

- 7.8. Make appropriate contingency plans to cover foreseeable system failure or operational requirement. Contingency planning to include:
 - 7.8.1. Escape routes
 - 7.8.2. Position reference failures
 - 7.8.3. Sensors
 - 7.8.4. Weather
 - 7.8.5. Power
 - 7.8.6. Propulsion
 - 7.8.7. Worst case failure

- 7.9. Describe appropriate procedures to be followed when approaching a work site and transferring from manual/ joystick to DP control, taking into account:
 - 7.9.1. Speed
 - 7.9.2. Distance
 - 7.9.3. Drift test
 - 7.9.4. Location of surface and sub-sea structures
 - 7.9.5. Drift-on/drift-off
 - 7.9.6. Testing manual control
 - 7.9.7. Independent joystick control
 - 7.9.8. Current/tide changes
 - 7.9.9. Weather forecasts
 - 7.9.10. Worst case failure testing
 - 7.9.11. Testing of the DP alert status system.

- 7.10. Demonstrate effective completion of setup/location and change of watch checklists and task specific checklists as required.
- 7.11. Demonstrate the effectiveness of closed-loop communications needed during DP operations and task specific communications as per IMCA M103-Guidelines for the design and operation of dynamically positioned vessels, for the exercise being conducted.
- 7.12. Conduct vessel positioning manoeuvres and station keeping functions following operational plan and procedures.
- 7.13. Organise DP watchkeeping procedures:
 - 7.13.1. Manning of DP console
 - 7.13.2. Maintaining lookout
 - 7.13.3. Internal and external communications
 - 7.13.4. Observing recognised safe working practices

- 7.14. Conduct appropriate watch handover procedures, to include but not limited to:
 - 7.14.1. Status board
 - 7.14.2. Weather forecasts
 - 7.14.3. Vessel status
 - 7.14.4. DP status
 - 7.14.5. Field operations
 - 7.14.6. Vessel operations
 - 7.14.7. Completing appropriate checklists

- 7.15. Maintain the appropriate logbooks and records pertaining to DP operations including IMCA incident report form, fault logs, position reference systems logs.
- 7.16. Evaluate the various information, warning and alarm messages communicated to the operator.

- 7.17 Relate the content of the messages in 2.12 above to the actions necessary in relation to the DP operation.
- 7.18 Understand Activity Specific Operational Guidelines.

EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

- 7.19 Recognize the conditions (as per main headings in failure mode check list – see final section of this annex – thrusters, sensors, position references, power, environment and miscellaneous) that will degrade operational or emergency status.
- 7.20 Recognize the warnings and alarms associated with conditions as per 3.1.
- 7.21 Evaluate the various factors to be taken into account subsequent to any system failure, determine and carry out appropriate corrective actions, including:
 - 7.21.1. Changing DP status
 - 7.21.2. When to terminate work
 - 7.21.3. Monitoring stability of position and heading
 - 7.21.4. Communication.

8. COURSE ASSESSMENT

Each candidate is required to demonstrate their competence to perform the tasks listed in the DP Set-up Practical Assessment Table.

The Control Sheet establishes the conditions under which the practical assessment occurs and the criteria against which the student's performance will be measured.

- 8.1. The Simulator Assessment Form for the practical assessment is to be used by the instructor/assessor when conducting assessments of the practical skills demonstration on the simulator.
- 8.2. The instructor/assessor will observe how the candidate demonstrates the skills listed in the NI's DP Set-up Practical Assessment Table and determine if the candidate passes or fails.

Re-Test Policy

The DP Set-up Practical Assessment may not be retaken; it must be passed on the first attempt. If test is failed, student must repeat the Simulator Course.

9. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

In order to be awarded a certificate of completion for the Simulator Course the trainee must pass an online assessment at the training centre. The exam is composed of multiple choice questions and shall be completed in 1 hour. The online assessment will consist of 30 questions and shall be completed in one hour with a pass mark of 70%.

Students who fail at the first attempt are allowed to have another two attempts within six months of the first attempt; however, the second attempt must be undertaken within 96 hours of the first attempt. Failing these three initial attempts, the student is required to repeat the Simulator Course and undertake the assessment again.

10. PRACTICAL ASSESSMENT

Assessment

Each candidate is required to demonstrate their competence to perform the tasks listed in the DP Set-up Practical Assessment Table.

The Control Sheet establishes the conditions under which the practical assessment occurs and the criteria against which the student's performance will be measured.

- 10.1. The simulator Assessment Form for the practical assessment is to be used by the instructor/assessor when conducting assessments of the practical skills demonstration on the simulator.
- 10.2. The instructor/assessor will observe how the candidate demonstrates the skills listed in the NI's DP Set-up Practical Assessment Table and determine if the candidate passes or fails.

11. Failure Mode Checklist

FAILURE MODE CHECKLIST

The Nautical Institute
DP Simulator Course

Course dates:

From: _____

To: _____

Instructor: _____

No.	FAILURE MODE (Thrusters)	CORRECTIVE ACTION Note: Corrective actions, indicated below, should be applied with due consideration to the circumstances of each case.	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
1	<p>Most useful thruster, or any thruster, fails to 100% pitch/rpm. (Feedback indicates 100%) Alternatively fail to 100% but have feedback indicate differently (i.e. - 50% or other).</p> <p>Possible (depending on vessel model in use):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Fail main engine full ahead. b) Fail main engine full astern. c) Fail tunnel thruster to full. d) Fail azimuth thruster to full. e) Fail azimuth thruster to full, with feedback indicating direction 180° opposite to actual. f) Fail thruster to full, with feedback frozen at value seen before failure. 	<p>Detect fault. Emergency stop Thruster. (Deselection of thruster does not stop thrust.) Consider vessel capability after failure/loss of thruster and take action, as required. Update DP Status, as required.</p>		

2	Most useful thruster, or any thruster, feedback indicates 100% pitch/rpm but thruster is working normally. Could also set faulty feedback value to less than 100%.	Detect fault. Is heading or position changing? Emergency stop thruster, if required. (Deselection of thruster does not stop thrust.) If thruster is not stopped (DP continues to operate thruster) stop operation, move to safe location and check thruster. Consider vessel capability after fault and take action, as required. Update DP Status, as required.		
3	Most useful thruster (or any thruster) fails to a value between 1% & 99% pitch/rpm. (Feedback indicates failed value). Alternatively fail to value but have feedback indicates different than failed value.	Detect fault. Is heading or position changing? Emergency Stop thruster, if required. (Deselection of thruster does not stop thrust.) If thruster is not stopped (DP continues to operate thruster) stop operation, move to safe location and check thruster. Consider vessel capability after fault and take action as required. Update DP Status, as required.		
4	Most useful thruster (or any thruster) fails to 0% pitch/rpm	Consider vessel capability after loss of thruster. Take action as required. Update DP Status, as required.		
5	Operator deselects thruster for engineering purposes (request from E/R) engineer trips another (critical) thruster.	Detect mistake. Inform engine room. Determine effect of the loss of this thruster has on vessel capability. Update DP Status, as required.		
6	Thruster having setpoint or feedback error. The magnitude of the error can be set to either cause a thruster alarm or be set so that the error is below alarm limits and only detectable by DPO observation of setpoint/feedback data. (Possibly azimuth 180° off setpoint)	Detect fault. Consider vessel capability. Have thruster checked and take corrective action as required. (Non alarm event might not be noticed by DPOs) The DPO must monitor the thruster setpoint / feedback and understand the information.		
7	Freeze a thruster (setpoint) after the vessel has settled on position and heading. (If a good model has built up there may be no alarm until weather conditions change or a move is input.)	Detect fault. (There may be no alarm if weather conditions are constant and the current model is built up.)		
8	Present a situation where thruster/thrusters down for maintenance. Vessel has sufficient remaining thrusters to hold position and complete the task assigned. However, when ½ partial blackout occurs, there will be insufficient thrusters online to maintain position control. (Vessel does not have redundancy with thruster/thrusters down.)	Project should not progress until adequate thrusters are available.		
9	Any of the thrusters down for maintenance. No effect on redundancy.	Consider effect of thruster loss on vessel capability.		

10	Downline, umbilical, cargo hose, etc., fouls a thruster causing it to fail.	Consider vessel capability after loss of thruster. Update DP Status, as required. Emergency Stop of the Thrusters to limit any further damage.		
11	ROV power failure while underneath vessel. ROV has sufficient tether out to reach surface and has positive buoyancy. Vessel may be secured/connected to bottom by a pipe, cable or umbilical.	Shutdown thrusters or move vessel (as required) to prevent ROV contacting thrusters. Give consideration to DP operation and redundancy while doing so. (Was umbilical length considered during planning of operation? Does ROV have positive or negative buoyancy?) Update DP Status, as required.		
12	Thrusters in fixed azimuth mode, in light weather conditions. Increase environmental loads to the point where vessel will not maintain position in fixed mode. Note: Not possible, if the simulated vessel doesn't have a fixed azimuth mode.	Thrusters should be switched to free slew as required to prevent loss of position.		
No.	FAILURE MODE (Sensors)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
13	Wind sensor shielded by platform and then sees an increase in wind (15 knots) after vessel move. (Wind increase can vary.)	Position vessel at a distance from platform such that excursion caused by an increase in wind will not cause a collision. (Be aware that wind sensor is not registering actual wind.)		
14	Wind sensor sees at extra wind (50 knots) for a short period due to helicopter arrival.	Deselect wind sensor before helicopter arrival. Reselect after departure. Note some DP systems will just reject the wind from the system, this is a problem if the wind is from a storm front.		
15	False high wind reading registering in DP system (wind sensor sending higher speed to DP than actual wind). Possibly input false reading of 88 knots or other.	Ascertain real order of magnitude of wind, deselect wind sensors, and monitor any vessel movement and correction.		
16	Anemometer fouled (possibly by halyard). Gives fixed wind direction and speed error.	Determine cause of fault. Initiate action to have fault corrected.		
17	Single Anemometer Failure.	Initiate repairs. Check remaining anemometer/anemometers, for quality of data, to determine if operation can continue.		

18	Selected Gyro drifting slowly three Gyros online.	Investigate gyro error. (If all three gyros are selected, voting should eliminate faulty gyro.) Update DP Status, as required.		
19	Selected Gyro drifting slowly two Gyros online.	Investigate gyro error. Attempt to determine which gyro is in error. (If difference becomes too large and faulty gyro cannot be determined, consideration must be given to stopping DP operations.) Update DP Status, as required.		
20	Single Gyro failure	Consider effect on redundancy. Initiate repairs. Check remaining Gyro/Gyros. Update DP Status, as required.		
21	Fail gyros (dependant on number selected) to cause position dropout/model control.	DP Operation to be suspended, until problem is corrected. Vessel move to a safe location, if required. Update DP Status, as required.		
22	Motion sensor selected jumps 5° static angle. (Jump magnitude can vary.)	Investigate alarm. Determine effect, if any, sensor fault has on position references. Update DP Status, as required.		
23	Single motion sensor failure.	Consider effect on redundancy. Initiate repairs. Check remaining sensors. Update DP Status, as required.		
24	Incorrect draft input. Either incorrect manual draft input or draft sensor error.	Detect error and take appropriate action to ensure correct input.		
No.	FAILURE MODE (Position References)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
25	A perfect (frozen) position reference updating DP with constant position. Requires a situation where only one reference or two of the same type are selected (i.e. DGNSS).	(Vessel likely to drift of due to frozen reference.) Detect fault. Enable stable references, if available, and deselect faulty references.		
26	GNSS signals/ DGNSS correction signals blocked because of close proximity to platform.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference, if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning. Should have been picked up during planning, change to a different correction source.		
27	DGNSS correction signals blocked/ become noisy due to atmospheric/scintillations interference.	Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available.		

28	Signal lost due to object (cranes, other vessel, etc.) passing between Artemis (fixed/mobile antennas), Fanbeam/Cyscan (sensor/reflector) or RADius /Radascan (interrogator/ transponder).	Determine cause (line of sight blocked). Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
29	Fail RADius/Radascan due to battery failure in transponder.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
30	Fanbeam/Cyscan/Spot tracksignal fails due to rain showers, snow or fog.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
31	Drift Fanbeam/Cyscan, due to system switching targets and acquiring reflectors on the coveralls of a moving worker (on a platform).	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
32	Fail HPR transponders due to excessive noise.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
33	HPR interference due to another vessel in the area using the same transponder.	Check with other vessels in area before deploying transponders.		
34	Fail HPR transponders due to battery failure or due to HPR system failure.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
35	Making position moves while working in shallow water using Taut Wire and/or HPR as references.	Take shallow water into account and expect large number of replumbs and possibly noisy HPR. If possible, deploy surface references as backups.		
36	Taut Wire fouled by ROV, diver, downlines, air lines etc.	Monitor divers/ROV closely. Make all parties aware of Tautwire/HPR locations. Deploy standby reference or fix problem with fouled reference.		

37	Taut Wire failure due to mechanical problems.	Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. If no standby reference, consider efec on vessel operational status.		
38	Conducting operation with using the minimum number of references required as per standing orders or field procedures. Fail one of the references.	Have standby reference available for activation/deployment. If no standby reference, consider effect on vessel operational status. Update DP Status, as required.		
39	Fail references (dependent on number and type selected) to cause position dropout/model control.	DP Operation to be suspended until problem is corrected. Vessel move to a safe location if required. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Activate standby reference if required/available.		
40	Increase noise on a reference to the point where it is still accepted by DP but weight is alternating between very low and/or 0.	Detect fault. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. (With no weight the reference is not acceptable.)		
41	Drop-out of GNSS signals resulting in loss of Absolute reference within DARPS system, and subsequent loss of "Reaction Box" function. (Shuttle Tanker, Tandem Loading)	Monitor movement of both FPSO/FSU and Shuttle tanker to ensure relative movement does not become out of phase. Stop cargo transfer operations. Prepare to abort operation or consider taut hawser mode if FSOG permit.		
42	Failure of all relative position reference systems, with only Absolute DGNSS functioning. (Shuttle Tanker, Tandem Loading)	Use all means to assess change in relative position – such as hawser catenary and/or tension. Stop cargo transfer operations. Prepare to abort operation or consider taut hawser mode if FSOG permit.		
43	Drift one of 2 online DARPS systems. (Shuttle Tanker, Tandem Loading)	Detect fault. Determine which of the 2 DARPS has an error. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Activate standby reference, if required/available.		
No.	FAILURE MODE (Power)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
44	Vessel equipped with switchboard that can be divided into at least 2 sections with a bus tie breaker. ½ the switchboard (1 section) has a blackout causing the loss of the thrusters it supplies. Vessel working	This would be a worst case failure and vessel need to go to Yellow alert, safely stop operations and then move vessel to a drift off position and move outside 500m		

	upwind of platform and near capability limits (with 1 Bus section offline).			
45	Complete blackout due to failure of bus tie breaker to work properly. (When operating with common bus.)	Monitor position while drifting. Prepare for immediate action on return of power supply. Update DP Status, as required. Emphasis on bridge / ER communication/coordination.		
46	Start operation with minimum number of generators. Increase environmental loads. (Power management system fails to react to increased demand.)	Monitor power usage and request start of extra generators as required.		
47	Generator/generators fail during operation.	Consider effect of reduced power capacity on capability of vessel. Bring extra generators online (if available) to replace those lost. Move vessel to safe location if required. Update DP Status, as required.		
48	Generator/generators out of service either due to failure or for maintenance.	Consider effect of reduced power capacity on capability.		
49	Vessel equipped with switchboard that can be divided into at least 2 sections with a bus tie breaker. At exercise start, should ½ the switchboard (1 section) have a blackout, vessel doesn't have required redundancy to conduct the operation.	Operation should not commence until required redundancy level can be achieved.		
50	Start exercise with common Bus and all online generators on either Bus 1 or Bus 2. (Blackout on that side will cause complete blackout)	Generators in use should be set so that power is available on both Bus.		
51	Start exercise (operation which requires the vessel to meet Class 2 redundancy requirements) with common Bus and all generators online.	The Bus should be split, with adequate generators online to meet redundancy requirements, before starting operations.		
52	Complete blackout. Then make all thrusters available and give back only 1 generator or multiple generators that have insufficient power to meet thrust requirements for the current scenario.	Monitor position while drifting. Prepare for immediate action on return of power supply. Decide how best to utilize available power/thrust so as to minimize loss of heading/position and the possibility of further blackout. Update DP Status, as required.		

No.	FAILURE MODE (Environment)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
53	Change weather conditions and/or current such that work must be terminated or vessel position/heading changed.	Observe degrading weather closely and take action before vessel loses redundancy or ability to safely conduct operation.		
54	Change current and/or wind 180° causing a blow off situation to become a blow on situation. (Possibly use in conjunction with item 55)	Determine effect on vessel capability. Determine if it is still safe to conduct operation. Update DP Status, as required.		
55	Increase current and/or wind to a point beyond limits for redundancy.	Change vessel heading/position to reduce current load. Suspend operation if heading/position change not possible. Update DP Status, as required.		
56	Wind shift from ahead to the beam. (Wind speed such that redundancy limits are exceeded.)	Determine effect on vessel capability. Adjust heading or position if required. Update DP Status, as required.		
57	Sudden wind shifting in both speed and direction due to thunder storm activity. (10 knots on bow to 50 knots on beam in 45 seconds.)	Determine effect on vessel capability. Adjust heading or position if required. Update DP Status, as required.		
No.	FAILURE MODE (Miscellaneous)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
58	Vessel is conducting subsea operations (Diving, Pipe lay, ROV, etc.) on the lee side of a platform. There is then a serious gas leak at the platform. Also applicable to DP Shuttle Tanker when connected to an FPSO during tandem loading operations.	Consider the effect of the leak on the vessel and the dangers it presents. Take action to immediately suspend operations and prepare to move the vessel to a safe location. Update DP Status, as required.		
59	Unknown external force causes position excursion (vessel alongside comes in contact, thruster wash, load on crane becomes fouled, crane lift was not vertical, tension on cargo hose winching line, etc.)	Determine cause of excursion and take action to remove force. Consider possibility of excursion during planning. Update DP Status, as required.		
60	Fire (false alarm or actual fire) or flooding. Possibly in a compartment containing DP related equipment.	Determine effect (if any) on vessel capability. Monitor to ensure that vessel remains within operational limits. Suspend DP operations and move to a safe location, if determined to be a real fire. Update DP Status, as required.		
61	Man overboard near running thruster/thrusters.	Shut down thruster/thrusters, if required. Determine effect of the shutdown on vessel capability. Monitor to ensure that vessel remains within operational limits. Possibly suspend DP operations and move to a safe		

		location, depending on the results of shutdown/recovery operation. Update DP Status, as required. Raise MOB Alarm.		
--	--	---	--	--

OFFSHORE SCHEME

MANDATORY: It is compulsory for training centres to apply at least one item from each section (Thrusters, Sensors, Position Reference, Power, Environment and Miscellaneous) during the Simulator Course and its exercises. Other failures are subject to the training centre’s choice, either to apply them through the exercises or discuss them during the debriefing. In the case of debriefing, a note should be made in the failure mode table to specify that.

Items recommended:

Item 1, 2, 4, 6 and 7

Item 21

Item 27

Item 44, 45, 47 and 52

Item 53

SHUTTLE TANKER: All items below are MANDATORY during Course C of the Shuttle Tanker scheme.

Item 1, 4, 5

Item 15 and Item 21

Item 25, 27, 28, 38, 39, 41 and 42

Item 46 and 49

Item 55 and 57

Item 58

12. SUMMARY OF SIMULATION

Team 1	Team 2	Team 3
Team Members	Team Members	Team Members
Wind:	Wind:	Wind:
Current:	Current:	Current:
Final Approach Heading:	Final Approach Heading:	Final Approach Heading:
500 M Checklist Completed:	500 M Checklist Completed:	500 M Checklist Completed:
Dive Checklist Complete:	Dive Checklist Complete:	Dive Checklist Complete:
Communications Check Completed:	Communications Check Completed:	Communications Check Completed:
DP Events Induced by Instructor	DP Events Induced by Instructor	DP Events Induced by Instructor

13. RECORDING STUDENT PERFORMANCE

STUDENT PERFORMANCE <u>DP ADVANCED COMPETENCE CHECKLIST</u>			Participant name:		
NI Competence			Date:		
			Course:		
1. OPERATION OF A DP SYSTEM			Tax code	Checked	Comment
1.1	Demonstrate an ability to set up and operate the DP system under the various control modes, and to carry out manual, mixed manual/automatic manoeuvres.	A			
1.2	Demonstrate the operation of position reference systems, sensors and peripheral equipment associated with the DP system.	A			
2. DP OPERATION					
2.1	Interpret vessel plans and specifications, capability diagrams and other data relevant to the planning and conduct of DP operations.	A			
2.2	Using vessel and other data assess the capability of the vessel to complete successfully and proposed operation.	A			
2.3	Carry out risk assessment exercise on proposed operations and determine the level of redundancy appropriate.	A			
2.4	Make appropriate contingency plans to cover any foreseeable system failure or operational requirement. Contingency planning to include appropriate "escape routes" for the vessel.	A			
2.5	Demonstrate compliance with appropriate procedures to be followed when approaching any work site and transferring from conventional vessel control to DP control.	A	N/A		
2.6	Demonstrate effective completion of Pre DP and other checklists.	A			
2.7	Demonstrate effective communication needed during DP operations and the testing procedures.	A			
2.8	Conduct vessel positioning manoeuvres and station keeping functions following operational plan and procedures.	A			
2.9	Organize DP watchkeeping procedures observing recognized safe working practices.	I	N/A		
2.10	Conduct appropriate watch handover procedures, completing appropriate checklists.	A	N/A		
2.11	Maintain the appropriate logbooks and records pertaining to DP operations.	A			
2.12	Evaluate the various information, warning and alarm messages communicated to the operator.	I			
2.13	Relate the content of the messages in 2.12 above to the actions necessary in relation to the DP operation.	I			
3. EMERGENCY PROCEDURES					
3.1	Recognise the conditions that will cause degraded operational status or emergency status.	K			
3.2	Recognise the warnings and alarms associated with catastrophic failure.	K			
3.3	Evaluate the various factors to be taken into account subsequent to any system failure and determine appropriate actions.	I			
3.4	Carry out procedures to stabilize the vessel position and heading subsequent to a variety of system failures and take appropriate decisions and actions relating to the continuance or abandonment of the operation.	I			

Levels of Cognition	Instructor Name:
Level 1: Knowledge (K) To remember to r to reproduce on basis of appropriate, previously learned information.	
Level 2: Understanding (U) To give meaning to new situations and or new material by recollection and using necessary present information. To give evidence of insight in certain activities.	Date:
Level 3: Application (A) To use previously acquired information in new and concrete situations to solve problem that have single or best answers.	Sign:

Level 4: Integration (I)

To separate information into their component parts, to examine such information to develop divergent conclusions by identifying motives or causes, making inferences and or finding evidence to support generalisations.

To creatively apply prior knowledge and skills to produce a new or original whole.

To judge the value of material based on personal values or opinions, resulting in an end product, with given purpose, without real right or wrong answers.

14. PRACTICAL ASSESSMENT SKILLS FORM (ASSESSOR)

Training Centre Name:	
Student Name	NI Customer Number
Assessor Name	Date

Objective: This assessment is meant to assess the DP Simulator Course students on the minimum standards of competence, by the Nautical Institute approved instructor/assessor by observation of the demonstrable tasks according to the following table.

Notes:

- The students are able to use scenario and vessel descriptions and the DP set-up checklist provided by the Training Centre, however, the use of personal notes during the assessment is not allowed.
- The instructor's role is to monitor for assessment purposes and shall not assist, coach or lead the student
- The student must pass every item on the list below to be successful. If the student does not pass this DP Set-up Practical Assessment, he/she must repeat the DP Simulator Course

Knowledge, Understanding and Proficiency	Pass (P)/ Fail (F)	Observations by Assessor
Competency	Take control on the DP operator station	
1. Change the vessel manoeuvre switch from manual control to DP control (if available)		
2. Take command on the DP operator station		
3. Enable all propellers, thrusters and rudders available		
4. Check available power		
Competence	Check / enable the sensors	
1. Check/enable the gyro/compasses in accordance with the vessel's DP classification		
2. Check/enable the wind sensors in accordance with the vessel's DP classification		
3. Check/enable the motion sensors in accordance with the vessel's DP classification		
Competence	Enable position reference system(s)	
1. Select/enable at least one reference system		
2. Verify it is acquired by the system		
Competence	Change to DP joystick manual control mode	
1. Select DP joystick manual control		

2. Stabilise position and heading Select DP joystick auto heading mode		
Competence	Change from DP joystick manual control to DP auto position control mode	
1. Control the vessel using auto heading/yaw mode		
2. Control the vessel using auto sway/athwart mode		
3. Control the vessel using auto surge/ Fore-aft control mode		
4. Control the vessel in 3 Axis (DP Auto position mode)		
Competence	Select and verify DP settings using a provided DP set-up checklist	
This checklist shall include but not be limited to: 1. Selects an appropriate unit 2. Selects an appropriate coordinate system 3. Selects an appropriate gain setting 4. Set up warnings and alarms 5. Check if the power system configuration is in accordance with the vessel's DP classification 6. Check thrusters settings		

Student Signature

Assessor Signature



Annex C

Sea Time Reduction Course

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP SEATIME REDUCTION COURSE

© The Nautical Institute 2023

200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom

Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817

www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI Sea Time Reduction Course		
Title NI Sea Time Reduction Course	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v2 (January 2022)	New content v1 (January 2023)
85	Failure Mode Checklist		The Failure Mode Checklist amendments

Contents

1. Introduction	82
2. Minimum Entry Qualification Requirements	82
3. Number of Hours	82
4. Ratio of Students/Instructors/Equipment	82
5. Delivery Method	82
6. Course Aims	83
7. Course Objectives	83
8. Course Assessment	84
9. Online Assessment	84
10. Practical Assessment	84
11. Failure Mode Checklist	85

1. INTRODUCTION

The period of supervised DP sea time days after the Simulator Course may be reduced by a maximum of 30 days by the satisfactory completion of an intensive DP Simulator Course.

This course can be done straight after the Simulator Course, but trainee DPOs are required to do a minimum of 30 DP sea time days on board a classed DP vessel and have the Statement of Suitability signed by Master after the course. A company confirmation letter is required for verification of that DP sea time.

As with the other components of the scheme, all DP time or courses leading to reduction of DP time must have been completed within the previous five years.

The Sea Time Reduction training cannot be used for upgrading a certificate from Limited to Unlimited.

2. MINIMUM ENTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

The course is an optional element of the DPO training programme and as such successful completion of the DP Simulator Course is required before attendance. Candidate must hold a certificate of competency.

3. NUMBER OF HOURS

A minimum of 37.5 hours of instruction time is required for this course.

4. RATIO OF STUDENTS/ INSTRUCTORS/ EQUIPMENT

The number of students attending a STR Course must be regulated such that each student obtains the maximum amount of 'hands-on' experience of operating the system to ensure the validity of awarding six DP sea time days for each day spent in the simulator. In order to achieve this, the NI allows a maximum of three students per class being taught by one instructor in a Class A Simulator.

5. DELIVERY METHOD

The training will be predominantly practical/operational in nature.

In addition to the opportunities that arise during the exercise briefing and debriefing sessions, provisions will be made during classroom tuition to facilitate student feedback of training needs.

Exercise scenarios and case studies will be carried out on a facility that effectively replicates the working environment the trainee will meet on board. Simulator equipment for the DP Sea Time Reduction training should incorporate facilities that:

- Create a real time operating environment that includes navigation control, manoeuvring and communications instruments replicating that found on a typical dynamically controlled vessel, that will allow trainees to carry out DP watchkeeping and station keeping tasks
- Provide a realistic visual scenario for day and night, including variable visibility, with a minimum horizontal and vertical field of view in viewing sectors appropriate to the DP watchkeeping and station keeping tasks
- Realistically simulate own ship dynamics in open water conditions, including the effects of weather, tidal stream, shallow water and interaction with other vessels
- Realistically simulate faults in the dynamic positioning control system, power generation and distribution systems, propulsion systems, position reference equipment, other sensor equipment and the machine/human interface.

6. COURSE AIMS

The Sea Time Reduction Course should be an opportunity for the trainee to spend extended and intense periods of time on DP station keeping and must challenge the trainee to enhance, consolidate and demonstrate their:

- 6.1. Knowledge of the DP system and additional equipment and instruments,
- 6.2. Situational awareness,
- 6.3. Communication and teamwork skills,
- 6.4. Ability to analyse trends and pre-empt problems before they arise,
- 6.5. Ability to evaluate and respond to alarms, faults and emergencies with calm, reason and confidence, and
- 6.6. Ability to complete such administrative and safety-related procedures as completing checklists, filling in logs and performing thorough watch handovers.

The range of exercises a centre develops to achieve these aims should be appropriate to the intended target group. The following are examples of the typical operational areas that should be considered:

- 6.7. Saturation and air dive support
- 6.8. Sub-sea construction and heavy lift
- 6.9. ROV operations
- 6.10. OSV operations
- 6.11. Cable and pipe laying operations
- 6.12. Drilling operations
- 6.13. Offshore loading operations
- 6.14. Shuttle tanker.

7. COURSE OBJECTIVES

Operation of a DP System

- 7.1. Demonstrate the ability to set up and operate the DP system under the various control modes, and to carry out manual, mixed manual and automatic and fully automatic maneuvers.
- 7.2. Demonstrate within the DP Simulator the operation of position reference systems, sensors and peripheral equipment associated with the DP system.

DP Operation

- 7.3. Interpret vessel plans and specifications, capability diagrams and other data relevant to the planning and conduct of DP operations.
- 7.4. Using vessel and other data, assess the capability of the vessel to successfully complete any proposed operation.
- 7.5. Carry out a risk assessment exercise on proposed operations and determine the level of redundancy appropriate.
- 7.6. Make appropriate contingency plans to cover any foreseeable system failure or operational requirement. Contingency planning to include appropriate escape routes for the vessel.
- 7.7. Demonstrate compliance with appropriate procedures to be followed when approaching any work site and transferring from conventional vessel control to DP control.
- 7.8. Demonstrate effective completion of pre-DP and other checklists.
- 7.9. Demonstrate the effective communications necessary during DP operations and the testing procedures.
- 7.10. Conduct vessel positioning maneuvers and station keeping functions following operational plan and procedures.
- 7.11. Organize DP watchkeeping procedures observing recognized safe working practices.
- 7.12. Conduct appropriate watch handover procedures, completing appropriate checklists.

- 7.13. Maintain the appropriate logbooks and records pertaining to DP operations.
- 7.14. Evaluate the various information, warning and alarm messages communicated to the operator.
- 7.15. Relate the content of the messages in 2.12 above to the actions necessary in relation to the DP operation.

Emergency Procedures

- 7.16. Recognize the conditions that will cause degraded operational status or emergency status.
- 7.17. Recognize the warnings and alarms associated with worst case failure.
- 7.18. Evaluate the various factors to be taken into account subsequent to any system failure and determine appropriate actions.
- 7.19. Carry out procedures to stabilize the vessel position and heading subsequent to a variety of system failures and take appropriate decisions and actions relating to the continuance or abandonment of the operation. This to include the following:
 - 7.19.1. Thruster fail to max pitch
 - 7.19.2. Setpoint/feedback offset
 - 7.19.3. Loss of all position reference system, entering move into DP system when in DR mode
 - 7.19.4. Worst case failure and action to be taken
 - 7.19.5. Movement of position reference systems

In 7.4 one exercise should be in the form of a table top analysis. An FMEA should be used along with other appropriate documentation to evaluate a vessels capability to carry out a given operation.

8. COURSE ASSESSMENT

Training centre are required to develop an effective assessment procedure to ensure that only suitable applicants are deemed to have successfully completed the course.

9. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

Not Applicable

10. PRACTICAL ASSESSMENT

To be arranged by the centre

11. Failure Mode Checklist

FAILURE MODE CHECKLIST

The Nautical Institute

DP STR Course

Course dates:

From: _____

To: _____

Instructor: _____

No.	FAILURE MODE (Thrusters)	CORRECTIVE ACTION Note: Corrective actions, indicated below, should be applied with due consideration to the circumstances of each case.	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
1	<p>Most useful thruster, or any thruster, fails to 100% pitch/rpm. (Feedback indicates 100%) Alternatively fail to 100% but have feedback indicate differently (i.e. - 50% or other).</p> <p>Possible (depending on vessel model in use):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Fail main engine full ahead. b) Fail main engine full astern. c) Fail tunnel thruster to full. d) Fail azimuth thruster to full. e) Fail azimuth thruster to full, with feedback indicating direction 180° opposite to actual. f) Fail thruster to full, with feedback frozen at value seen before failure. 	<p>Detect fault. Emergency stop Thruster. (Deselection of thruster does not stop thrust.) Consider vessel capability after failure/loss of thruster and take action, as required. Update DP Status, as required.</p>		

2	Most useful thruster, or any thruster, feedback indicates 100% pitch/rpm but thruster is working normally. Could also set faulty feedback value to less than 100%.	Detect fault. Is heading or position changing? Emergency stop thruster, if required. (Deselection of thruster does not stop thrust.) If thruster is not stopped (DP continues to operate thruster) stop operation, move to safe location and check thruster. Consider vessel capability after fault and take action, as required. Update DP Status, as required.		
3	Most useful thruster (or any thruster) fails to a value between 1% & 99% pitch/rpm. (Feedback indicates failed value). Alternatively fail to value but have feedback indicates different than failed value.	Detect fault. Is heading or position changing? Emergency Stop thruster, if required. (Deselection of thruster does not stop thrust.) If thruster is not stopped (DP continues to operate thruster) stop operation, move to safe location and check thruster. Consider vessel capability after fault and take action as required. Update DP Status, as required.		
4	Most useful thruster (or any thruster) fails to 0% pitch/rpm	Consider vessel capability after loss of thruster. Take action as required. Update DP Status, as required.		
5	Operator deselected thruster for engineering purposes (request from E/R) engineer trips another (critical) thruster.	Detect mistake. Inform engine room. Determine effect of the loss of this thruster has on vessel capability. Update DP Status, as required.		
6	Thruster having setpoint or feedback error. The magnitude of the error can be set to either cause a thruster alarm or be set so that the error is below alarm limits and only detectable by DPO observation of setpoint/feedback data. (Possibly azimuth 180° off setpoint)	Detect fault. Consider vessel capability. Have thruster checked and take corrective action as required. (Non alarm event might not be noticed by DPOs) The DPO must monitor the thruster setpoint / feedback and understand the information.		
7	Freeze a thruster (setpoint) after the vessel has settled on position and heading. (If a good model has built up there may be no alarm until weather conditions change or a move is input.)	Detect fault. (There may be no alarm if weather conditions are constant and the current model is built up.)		
8	Present a situation where thruster/thrusters down for maintenance. Vessel has sufficient remaining thrusters to hold position and complete the task assigned. However, when ½ partial blackout occurs, there will be insufficient thrusters online to maintain position control. (Vessel does not have redundancy with thruster/thrusters down.)	Project should not progress until adequate thrusters are available.		
9	Any of the thrusters down for maintenance. No effect on redundancy.	Consider effect of thruster loss on vessel capability.		

10	Downline, umbilical, cargo hose, etc., fouls a thruster causing it to fail.	Consider vessel capability after loss of thruster. Update DP Status, as required. Emergency stop of the thrusters to limit any further damages.		
11	ROV power failure while underneath vessel. ROV has sufficient tether out to reach surface and has positive buoyancy. Vessel may be secured/connected to bottom by a pipe, cable or umbilical.	Shutdown thrusters or move vessel (as required) to prevent ROV contacting thrusters. Give consideration to DP operation and redundancy while doing so. (Was umbilical length considered during planning of operation? Does ROV have positive or negative buoyancy?) Update DP Status, as required.		
12	Thrusters in fixed azimuth mode, in light weather conditions. Increase environmental loads to the point where vessel will not maintain position in fixed mode. Note: Not possible, if the simulated vessel doesn't have a fixed azimuth mode.	Thrusters should be switched to free slew as required to prevent loss of position.		
No.	FAILURE MODE (Sensors)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
13	Wind sensor shielded by platform and then sees an increase in wind (15 knots) after vessel move. (Wind increase can vary.)	Position vessel at a distance from platform such that excursion caused by an increase in wind will not cause a collision. (Be aware that wind sensor is not registering actual wind.)		
14	Wind sensor sees at extra wind (50 knots) for a short period due to helicopter arrival.	Deselect wind sensor before helicopter arrival. Reselect after departure. Note some DP systems will just reject the wind from the system, this is a problem if the wind is from a storm front.		
15	False high wind reading registering in DP system (wind sensor sending higher speed to DP than actual wind). Possibly input false reading of 88 knots or other.	Ascertain real order of magnitude of wind, deselect wind sensors, and monitor any vessel movement and correction.		
16	Anemometer fouled (possibly by halyard). Gives fixed wind direction and speed error.	Determine cause of fault. Initiate action to have fault corrected.		
17	Single Anemometer Failure.	Initiate repairs. Check remaining anemometer/anemometers, for quality of data, to determine if operation can continue.		

18	Selected Gyro drifting slowly three Gyros online.	Investigate gyro error. (If all three gyros are selected, voting should eliminate faulty gyro.) Update DP Status, as required.		
19	Selected Gyro drifting slowly two Gyros online.	Investigate gyro error. Attempt to determine which gyro is in error. (If difference becomes too large and faulty gyro cannot be determined, consideration must be given to stopping DP operations.) Update DP Status, as required.		
20	Single Gyro failure	Consider effect on redundancy. Initiate repairs. Check remaining Gyro/Gyros. Update DP Status, as required.		
21	Fail gyros (dependant on number selected) to cause position dropout/model control.	DP Operation to be suspended, until problem is corrected. Vessel move to a safe location, if required. Update DP Status, as required.		
22	Motion sensor selected jumps 5° static angle. (Jump magnitude can vary.)	Investigate alarm. Determine effect, if any, sensor fault has on position references. Update DP Status, as required.		
23	Single motion sensor failure.	Consider effect on redundancy. Initiate repairs. Check remaining sensors. Update DP Status, as required.		
24	Incorrect draft input. Either incorrect manual draft input or draft sensor error.	Detect error and take appropriate action to ensure correct input.		
No.	FAILURE MODE (Position References)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
25	A perfect (frozen) position reference updating DP with constant position. Requires a situation where only one reference or two of the same type are selected (i.e. DGNSS).	(Vessel likely to drift of due to frozen reference.) Detect fault. Enable stable references, if available, and deselect faulty references.		
26	GNSS signals/ DGNSS correction signals blocked because of close proximity to platform.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference, if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning. Should have been picked up during planning, change to a different correction source.		
27	DGNSS correction signals blocked/ become noisy due to atmospheric/scintillations interference.	Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available.		

28	Signal lost due to object (cranes, other vessel, etc.) passing between Artemis (fixed/mobile antennas), Fanbeam/Cyscan (sensor/reflector) or RADius /Radascan (interrogator/ transponder).	Determine cause (line of sight blocked). Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
29	Fail RADius/Radascan due to battery failure in transponder.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
30	Fanbeam/Cyscan/Spot tracksignal fails due to rain showers, snow or fog.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
31	Drift Fanbeam/Cyscan, due to system switching targets and acquiring reflectors on the coveralls of a moving worker (on a platform).	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
32	Fail HPR transponders due to excessive noise.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
33	HPR interference due to another vessel in the area using the same transponder.	Check with other vessels in area before deploying transponders.		
34	Fail HPR transponders due to battery failure or due to HPR system failure.	Determine cause. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. Consider loss during operation planning.		
35	Making position moves while working in shallow water using Taut Wire and/or HPR as references.	Take shallow water into account and expect large number of replumbs and possibly noisy HPR. If possible, deploy surface references as backups.		
36	Taut Wire fouled by ROV, diver, downlines, air lines etc.	Monitor divers/ROV closely. Make all parties aware of Tautwire/HPR locations. Deploy standby reference or fix problem with fouled reference.		

37	Taut Wire failure due to mechanical problems.	Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. If no standby reference, consider efec on vessel operational status.		
38	Conducting operation with using the minimum number of references required as per standing orders or field procedures. Fail one of the references.	Have standby reference available for activation/deployment. If no standby reference, consider effect on vessel operational status. Update DP Status, as required.		
39	Fail references (dependent on number and type selected) to cause position dropout/model control.	DP Operation to be suspended until problem is corrected. Vessel move to a safe location if required. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Activate standby reference if required/available.		
40	Increase noise on a reference to the point where it is still accepted by DP but weight is alternating between very low and/or 0.	Detect fault. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Update DP Status, as required. Activate standby reference if required/available. (With no weight the reference is not acceptable.)		
41	Drop-out of GNSS signals resulting in loss of Absolute reference within DARPS system, and subsequent loss of "Reaction Box" function. (Shuttle Tanker, Tandem Loading)	Monitor movement of both FPSO/FSU and Shuttle tanker to ensure relative movement does not become out of phase. Stop cargo transfer operations. Prepare to abort operation or consider taut hawser mode if FSOG permit.		
42	Failure of all relative position reference systems, with only Absolute DGNSS functioning. (Shuttle Tanker, Tandem Loading)	Use all means to assess change in relative position – such as hawser catenary and/or tension. Stop cargo transfer operations. Prepare to abort operation or consider taut hawser mode if FSOG permit.		
43	Drift one of 2 online DARPS systems. (Shuttle Tanker, Tandem Loading)	Detect fault. Determine which of the 2 DARPS has an error. Check standing orders/field procedures for minimum references. Activate standby reference, if required/available.		
No.	FAILURE MODE (Power)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
44	Vessel equipped with switchboard that can be divided into at least 2 sections with a bus tie breaker. ½ the switchboard (1 section) has a blackout causing the loss of the thrusters it supplies. Vessel working	This would be a worst case failure and vessel need to go to Yellow alert, safely stop operations and then move vessel to a drift off position and move outside 500m		

	upwind of platform and near capability limits (with 1 Bus section offline).			
45	Complete blackout due to failure of bus tie breaker to work properly. (When operating with common bus.)	Monitor position while drifting. Prepare for immediate action on return of power supply. Update DP Status, as required. Emphasis on bridge / ER communication/coordination.		
46	Start operation with minimum number of generators. Increase environmental loads. (Power management system fails to react to increased demand.)	Monitor power usage and request start of extra generators as required.		
47	Generator/generators fail during operation.	Consider effect of reduced power capacity on capability of vessel. Bring extra generators online (if available) to replace those lost. Move vessel to safe location if required. Update DP Status, as required.		
48	Generator/generators out of service either due to failure or for maintenance.	Consider effect of reduced power capacity on capability.		
49	Vessel equipped with switchboard that can be divided into at least 2 sections with a bus tie breaker. At exercise start, should ½ the switchboard (1 section) have a blackout, vessel doesn't have required redundancy to conduct the operation.	Operation should not commence until required redundancy level can be achieved.		
50	Start exercise with common Bus and all online generators on either Bus 1 or Bus 2. (Blackout on that side will cause complete blackout)	Generators in use should be set so that power is available on both Bus.		
51	Start exercise (operation which requires the vessel to meet Class 2 redundancy requirements) with common Bus and all generators online.	The Bus should be split, with adequate generators online to meet redundancy requirements, before starting operations.		
52	Complete blackout. Then make all thrusters available and give back only 1 generator or multiple generators that have insufficient power to meet thrust requirements for the current scenario.	Monitor position while drifting. Prepare for immediate action on return of power supply. Decide how best to utilize available power/thrust so as to minimize loss of heading/position and the possibility of further blackout. Update DP Status, as required.		

No.	FAILURE MODE (Environment)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
53	Change weather conditions and/or current such that work must be terminated or vessel position/heading changed.	Observe degrading weather closely and take action before vessel loses redundancy or ability to safely conduct operation.		
54	Change current and/or wind 180° causing a blow off situation to become a blow on situation. (Possibly use in conjunction with item 55)	Determine effect on vessel capability. Determine if it is still safe to conduct operation. Update DP Status, as required.		
55	Increase current and/or wind to a point beyond limits for redundancy.	Change vessel heading/position to reduce current load. Suspend operation if heading/position change not possible. Update DP Status, as required.		
56	Wind shift from ahead to the beam. (Wind speed such that redundancy limits are exceeded.)	Determine effect on vessel capability. Adjust heading or position if required. Update DP Status, as required.		
57	Sudden wind shifting in both speed and direction due to thunder storm activity. (10 knots on bow to 50 knots on beam in 45 seconds.)	Determine effect on vessel capability. Adjust heading or position if required. Update DP Status, as required.		
No.	FAILURE MODE (Miscellaneous)	CORRECTIVE ACTION	COMPLETED	EXERCISE No.
58	Vessel is conducting subsea operations (Diving, Pipe lay, ROV, etc.) on the lee side of a platform. There is then a serious gas leak at the platform. Also applicable to DP Shuttle Tanker when connected to an FPSO during tandem loading operations.	Consider the effect of the leak on the vessel and the dangers it presents. Take action to immediately suspend operations and prepare to move the vessel to a safe location. Update DP Status, as required.		
59	Unknown external force causes position excursion (vessel alongside comes in contact, thruster wash, load on crane becomes fouled, crane lift was not vertical, tension on cargo hose winching line, etc.)	Determine cause of excursion and take action to remove force. Consider possibility of excursion during planning. Update DP Status, as required.		
60	Fire (false alarm or actual fire) or flooding. Possibly in a compartment containing DP related equipment.	Determine effect (if any) on vessel capability. Monitor to ensure that vessel remains within operational limits. Suspend DP operations and move to a safe location, if determined to be a real fire. Update DP Status, as required.		
61	Man overboard near running thruster/thrusters.	Shut down thruster/thrusters, if required. Determine effect of the shutdown on vessel capability. Monitor to ensure that vessel remains within operational limits. Possibly suspend DP operations and move to a safe		

		location, depending on the results of shutdown/recovery operation. Update DP Status, as required. Raise MOB alarm.		
--	--	---	--	--

OFFSHORE SCHEME

MANDATORY: It is compulsory for training centres to apply at least one item from each section (Thrusters, Sensors, Position Reference, Power, Environment and Miscellaneous) during the Simulator Course and its exercises. Other failures are subject to the training centre’s choice, either to apply them through the exercises or discuss them during the debriefing. In the case of debriefing, a note should be made in the failure mode table to specify that.

Items recommended:

Item 1, 2, 4, 6 and 7

Item 21

Item 27

Item 44, 45, 47 and 52

Item 53

SHUTTLE TANKER: All items below are MANDATORY during Course C of the Shuttle Tanker scheme.

Item 1, 4, 5

Item 15 and Item 21

Item 25, 27, 28, 38, 39, 41 and 42

Item 46 and 49

Item 55 and 57

Item 58



Annex D

Shuttle Tanker Course A

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP SHUTTLE TANKER COURSE A

© The Nautical Institute 2023

200B Lambeth Road, London, SE1 7JY, United Kingdom

Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817 www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI Shuttle Tanker Course A		
Title NI Shuttle Tanker Course A	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v1 (January 2022)	New content v1 (January 2023)

Contents

1. Introduction	98
2. Minimum Entry Qualification Requirements	98
3. Number of Hours	98
4. Ratio of Students/Instructors/Equipment	98
5. Delivery Method	98
6. Course Aims	99
7. Course Objectives	99
8. Course Assessment	99
9. Online Assessment	99

1. INTRODUCTION

Course A is an NI Recognition Course (not an Accredited Course) and refers to the completion of appropriate Position Reference System (PRS) course offered by Recognised Position Reference System manufacturers or their approved agents. This course may be offered by accredited DP Training Centres having facilities to conduct the course with the approval of system manufacturers.

Evidence of course completion must be provided by appropriate documentary evidence issued by the organization conducting the course. Based on the evidences, Training centres should complete, sign and stamp the appropriate entry in the Shuttle Tanker Logbook.

The Course A PRS training requirement may also be satisfied by a participant undertaking training at a centre approved by The NI for PRS training. Such training must be conducted over a period of 4-5 days and cover instruction in a minimum of 3 different PRS arrangements.

At the end of the course, the trainee should obtain a certificate of attendance. The NI Recognition Logo may be used. The NI recognizes these courses but does not accredit them.

2. MINIMUM ENTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

There are no minimum entry requirements but completion of a DP Induction Course or a suitable “DP Awareness” course is recommended.

3. NUMBER OF HOURS

The duration of each individual PRS course should be as per the Manufacturers recommendations.

The entire course duration is to be planned by the training number of PRS centre depending on their course content, number of PRS they wish to teach and the time they wish to allocate for each PRS as per manufacturer’s recommendation.

It is however recommended that the full course should be run for a minimum of four days (6 hours per day) to adequately cover all the aspects and requirements of the training.

4. RATIO OF STUDENTS/INSTRUCTORS/EQUIPMENT

The NI allows a maximum of ten students per class being taught by one instructor. Simulators used for this training could be the actual equipment or be PC based.

5. DELIVERY METHOD

The duration of each course should be as per the individual PRS manufacturer’s recommendations. Courses should be aligned with existing practices in regards to course duration. The contents of the course should be appropriate to the complexity and risk of each type of PRS.

Vessel owners are required to ensure onboard familiarization of current software version with structured familiarization program. Theory may be used to support the practical exercises either as a briefing, a de-briefing or for demonstration purposes.

The following PRS Systems are mandatory:

- Artemis operator course
- (HPR/HiPAP (or other HPR PRS) operator course
- DGNSS/DARPS (or other relative GPS PRS) operator course

The following are optional:

- Parker PMS System operator course
- RadaScan , RADius (or other FMCW PRS) operator course

- Cyscan, Fanbeam (or other laser based PRS) operator course

It is understood that the list above is not exhaustive and refers to the major systems currently in use. Other systems may be included if so desired or if newer systems are introduced.

Each position reference course should cover as a minimum the following:

- Principle of operation
- Advantages and disadvantages (limitations)
- Failure Modes
- Quick Reference Guides
- Interaction with other PRS

6. COURSE AIMS

On completion of the course, the student should be able to:

- 6.1. Have an understanding of the practical operations of the various Position Referencing Systems.
- 6.2. Be able to recognize the various alarms, warnings and information messages.
- 6.3. Be able to assess the strength, capability and dependability of the PRS System.
- 6.4. Be able to assess the weaknesses and limitations of the PRS System.
- 6.5. Recognise conditions that will cause degraded operational status of the PRS.
- 6.6. Take remedial action in the event of system failure due to loss of PRS.
- 6.7. Take emergency action, which may involve suspension of operations.

7. COURSE OBJECTIVES

The following is a list of the objectives which should be attained by the candidates upon completion of Course A. The trainee should be able to:

- 7.1 Describe the following position reference systems commonly associated with DP installations: Differential GNSS, hydro acoustic, Artemis, FMCW Radar and laser-based systems. (Taut wire and PRS interfaced with INS may also be described in basic terms)
- 7.2 Describe the failure modes of the following position reference systems: Differential GNSS, hydro acoustic, Artemis, FMCW Radar and laser-based systems. (Also Taut Wire and INS briefly)
- 7.3 Describe the following sensors associated with DP installations: vertical reference sensor/unit, motion reference unit, gyro compass, wind sensor (anemometer) and draught input sensor.
- 7.4 Understand the importance of ASOG, TAM and CAM.
- 7.5 Describe the failure modes of the following sensors: vertical reference sensor/unit, motion reference unit, gyro compass, wind sensor (anemometer) and draught input sensor.
- 7.6 Recognise the advantages as well as the limitations of the various systems.
- 7.7 Recognise that multiple PRS systems may be in use in Shuttle Tanker Operations, their balance and weighting, safe operating limits and how these may be degraded by failure of a single PRS.

8. COURSE ASSESSMENT

Appropriate assessment will depend on the PRS being taught and will be made by the training centre.

9. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

There are no on line assessments for this course



Annex E

DP Shuttle Tanker Course B

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP SHUTTLE TANKER COURSE B

© The Nautical Institute 2023

200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom

Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817

www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI Shuttle Tanker Course B		
Title NI Shuttle Tanker Course B	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v1 (January 2022)	New content v1 (January 2023)

Contents

1. Introduction	104
2. Minimum Entry Qualification Requirements	104
3. Number of Hours	104
4. Ratio of Students/Instructors/Equipment	104
5. Delivery Method	104
6. Course Aims	104
7. Course Objectives	104
8. Course Assessment	106
9. Online Assessment	106
10. Practical Assessment	106

1. INTRODUCTION

The shuttle tanker operation simulator training course relates to the offshore loading Phase 2 type course. To concentrate on shuttle tanker specific behaviours and include a range of offshore loading installation types.

2. MINIMUM ENTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

3. NUMBER OF HOURS

Five days (six hours per day), totaling 30 hours.

4. RATIO OF STUDENTS/INSTRUCTORS/EQUIPMENT

Three students maximum on a Class A Simulator only.

5. DELIVERY METHOD

As per training centre.

6. COURSE AIMS

The focus of the exercises should be on the practical handling of shuttle tankers in the vicinity of offshore installations. This should include approach to the operational zones, safe interaction with the offshore terminal facilities, including the effects of mooring systems, hose connections, emergency shutdowns, interaction with tanker assist vessels and field communications. All functions of propulsion, power generation and position reference systems should be included in the discussions and exercises, as well as effects and instances of equipment and system errors/failures. Students will also acquire knowledge of offtake tanker operational procedures.

A separate basic ship handling course should have been completed prior to attending this course, as the revision section is limited to a refresher on basic shiphandling techniques.

Such a shiphandling course should cover:

- 6.1. Effects of deadweight, draught, trim, speed and under-keel clearance on turning circles and stopping distances
- 6.2. Effects of wind and current on ship handling; application of rate of turn (ROT) techniques
- 6.3. Manoeuvring in shallow waters, including under-keel clearance caused by squat, rolling and pitching
- 6.4. Interaction between ships and between own ship and nearby banks (bank effect)
- 6.5. Berthing and unberthing under various wind, tide and sea-current conditions with and without tugs
- 6.6. Ship and tug interaction, various types of tugs
- 6.7. Use of propulsion and manoeuvring systems
- 6.8. Where possible, use of tunnel and azimuth thrusters

A suitable course format is currently available as Offshore Loading Phase 1 at some training establishments.

7. COURSE OBJECTIVES

The reasons for the majority of incidents related to vessel handling operations can be traced to human error or lack of professional problem mitigation. The main objective of the courses is for Masters and

DPOs to achieve optimal understanding and skills in DP mode, DP manual mode and in traditional manual modes, where appropriate. This will further improve the safety of the tanker's manoeuvring and loading operations.

Vessel handling exercises should be carried out on simulators. Approaches to offshore terminal should be carried out primarily by using DP systems, but a manual mode approach should be included for comparison. Simulations should also include reconstruction of known DP incidents involving offtake tankers. The complexity and value of these exercises will be enhanced by appropriate previous experience of the person in charge of the simulator.

Course Content

The following sections outline content of a typical training course designed to provide the competence required to achieve a satisfactory understanding and skill level.

- 7.1 Ship Handling Refresher Section:
 - 7.1.1 Repetition of rate of turn (ROT) techniques and other theoretical items from basic Ship handling course noted in Purpose (above).
 - 7.1.2 Practical exercise on simulator to confirm adequate understanding of MCRM principles and practices
 - 7.1.3 Further practical exercises on simulator if the instructor considers it necessary, based on responses from above two assessments

- 7.2 Offshore Loading specific section:
 - 7.2.1. Gain knowledge of requirements and guidelines that apply to offtake tanker DPOs. Achieve increased skills in operating the DP system and the manual manoeuvring of vessels under normal and severe/marginal environmental conditions, with systems intact and with system errors, such as loss of position reference systems, thruster failure and sensor failures, etc.
 - 7.2.2. Gain a good understanding of the DP system's possibilities and limitations.
 - 7.2.3. Gain good understanding of field operator's offshore loading manuals for various fields.
 - 7.2.4. Gain good understanding of the correct use of position reference systems for DP.

- 7.3 General section:
 - 7.3.1. Review and updates in latest industry best practice including new legislation, new recommendations/guidance, new systems, new fields and terminal types.
 - 7.3.2. Revision of DP Systems and Operation, to include Tandem FPSO (active and passive); STL; OLS; and taut hawser options:
 - (i) Interpret vessel specifications, field specifications and other data relevant to planning approach and offloading operations.
 - (ii) Using capability plots and environmental data to assess the capability of the vessel to complete the planned operation safely.
 - (iii) Ensure correct level of redundancy is available and that risks are assessed adequately.
 - (iv) Develop contingency plans and escape criteria/routes.
 - (v) Demonstrate compliance with appropriate procedures for different stages of the operation.
 - (vi) Demonstrate use of the Approach Mode, controlling the vessel speed and movement.
 - (vii) Demonstrate use of DP modes which monitor and control heading differences between FPSO/FSU and shuttle tanker, during tandem loading operations.
 - (viii) Demonstrate use of DP modes which monitor and control the relative position of the shuttle tanker, in relation to the FPSO/FSU, during tandem loading operations.
 - 7.3.3. Relative and Absolute Position reference systems such as DARPS, Artemis, Radius, Radascan, Fanbeam, and HiPap:
 - (i) Demonstrate correct set-up and use of such systems.

- (ii) Demonstrate awareness of errors and failures – how they occur, develop and need to be handled.

7.3.4. Discuss and learn from recent and important past incidents from industry sources.

Simulator exercises should include appropriate Failure Modes selected from the NI checklist, and:

- 7.4. Manoeuvring according to field procedures and DP best practice.
- 7.5. Approach and departure with and without tanker assist vessels.
- 7.6. Ship handling in changing wind speed and direction
- 7.7. Ship handling in changing current speed and direction
- 7.8. Ship handling with variable wind and current
- 7.9. Tandem positioning – free weathervane; operator selected heading; spread moored operation and taut hawser operations
- 7.10. Escape manoeuvring
- 7.11. Engine, propeller and rudder errors/failure
- 7.12. Thruster errors/failure
- 7.13. DP errors
- 7.14. PRS errors
- 7.15. ESD 1 and 2 processes.

8. COURSE ASSESSMENT

A theoretical and practical test should be held at the end of each course and an assessment report handed to the participant.

9. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

Not applicable.

10. PRACTICAL ASSESSMENT

As per training centre.

This page has been left intentionally blank



Annex F

DP Revalidation Course

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP REVALIDATION COURSE

© The Nautical Institute 2023
200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817
www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI DP Revalidation Course		
Title NI DP Revalidation Course	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

Contents

1. Introduction	112
2. Minimum Entry Qualification Requirements	112
3. Number of Hours	112
4. Ratio of Students/Instructors/Equipment	112
5. Delivery Method	113
6. Course Aims	113
7. Course Objectives	113
8. Course Assessment	116
9. Online Assessment	116
10. Practical Assessment	116
11. Mark Sheet Exam Number 1 (Practical Assessment)	119
12. Revalidation Course Timetable	121
13. DP Checklist	123

1. INTRODUCTION

The Nautical Institute (the NI) has introduced an alternative route to revalidation through the implementation of a Revalidation Course. The requirements for the Revalidation Course are established through this document.

2. MINIMUM ENTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

The minimum entry requirement is a DPO Certificate issued by the NI. The original DPO Certificate should be presented at the DP Centre where the Revalidation Course is completed.

The Revalidation Course may be completed up to six months before the revalidation date set by the NI. The course will be valid for a period of 12 months only, in which the DPO must send in an application into the NI.

If the participant is completing the course for the first time, there is no minimum DP sea time requirement.

If the participant is completing the course for a second or subsequent time, a minimum of 28 DP sea time days will be required to revalidate. This DP time may be completed prior to or after the Revalidation Course.

Where a participant subsequently revalidates after taking the course by completion of the full sea time requirement of 150 DP sea time days that participant can then take the Revalidation Course again without a DP sea time requirement.

Legacy and Grandfathered certificate holders will be able to take the course to revalidate until 31st December 2019. After this date, previous Legacy and Grandfathered certificate holders will need to complete DP sea time days towards revalidation.

Please Note: Shuttle Tanker Certificate holders will be unable to revalidate their certificates with the Revalidation Course. For information on how to revalidate a Shuttle Tanker Certificate or convert to the Offshore Scheme please see Section 6.

3. NUMBER OF HOURS

A minimum of 34 hours of teaching and simulator time is required for this course which includes the time needed for the examination and assessments. The course must schedule both practical and theoretical aspects with about 50% of the time assigned to each. The course is to be delivered over five days.

4. RATIO OF STUDENTS/INSTRUCTORS/EQUIPMENT

The NI allows a maximum of four students per class being taught by one instructor per one Class B or A Simulator.

By exception and where justified, five or six students may be considered at the discretion of the NI's Accreditation Team, based on the number of simulators in place, rotation of students and the use of the training methodology in place.

When two different types of simulator systems from two different manufacturers are available in a training centre, the best practice is to keep the trainee on the same simulator throughout the course.

A minimum requirement is to use an NI DP Class B Simulator to correspond with the training objectives for the Revalidation Course.

5. DELIVERY METHOD

Training will be split equally between theory and practical exercises. Theory may be used to support the practical exercises either as a briefing, a de-briefing or for demonstration purposes.

6. COURSE AIMS

The course is intended for those who have already been issued a DPO Certificate from the NI but are unable to revalidate their DPO Certificate if they have not gained sufficient DP sea time. The overall course aim is to update the DPOs with the latest rules and regulations, position references and sensors, known DP incidents and lessons learned. At the end of the course, the student should:

- 6.1. Have acquired knowledge of the latest rules and regulations
- 6.2. Have acquired knowledge of the latest developments within sensors and PRS
- 6.3. Have acquired knowledge of the latest relevant DP incidents and why they occurred
- 6.4. Be able to recognise the various alarm, warning and information messages
- 6.5. Carry out operational planning, risk assessment and hazard identification tasks
- 6.6. Set up the DP system for a particular task/operation
- 6.7. Decide on courses of action because of systems failure

7. COURSE OBJECTIVES

The following is a list of the objectives which should be attained by the DPOs upon completion of the Revalidation Course.

By the completion of the training session or period for DP Rules and Regulations the trainee should be able to:

- 7.1 List the various providers of documents containing statutory requirements and guidance relating to DP operations, including:
 - 7.1.1. IMO (including IMO MSC/Circ. 645 of 1994 and 1580 of 2017 Guidelines for Vessels with Dynamic Positioning Systems)
 - 7.1.2. Classification society DP rules
 - 7.1.3. International Marine Contractors Association (IMCA)
 - 7.1.4. Marine Technology Society (MTS)
 - 7.1.5. IMCA and MTS guidelines for ASOG
- 7.2 Explain the purpose of documentation associated with DP operations, such as DP operations manuals, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) and capability plots
- 7.3 Describe the IMO (DP) equipment classes and their application, with reference to the IMO Guidelines for Vessels with DP Systems.
- 7.4 Understand the importance of reporting DP incidents knows where to find DP incident reports and knows how to report DP incidents.

By the completion of the training session or period for DP Sensors and PRS the trainee should be able to:

- 7.5 Describe the following position reference systems commonly associated with DP installations: Differential GNSS, hydro acoustic, INS, taut wire, Artemis, FMCW Radar and laser-based systems.
- 7.6 Describe the failure modes of the following position reference systems: Differential GNSS, hydro acoustic, INS, taut wire, Artemis, FMCW Radar and laser-based systems.
- 7.7 Describe the following sensors associated with DP installations: vertical reference sensor/unit, motion reference unit, gyro compass, wind sensor (anemometer) and draught input sensor. ASOG, TAM and CAM.
- 7.8 Describe the failure modes of the following sensors: vertical reference sensor/unit, motion reference unit, gyro compass, wind sensor (anemometer) and draught input sensor.

By the completion of the training session or period for DP Set Up the trainee should be able to:

- 7.9 Ensure the vessel is on DP in accordance with the vessel's class and the vessel's operation manual. Class approved FMEA and ASOG (Complete DP Checklist)
- 7.10 Determine and set alarm and warning limits
- 7.11 Evaluate most appropriate PRS for specific DP-operations
- 7.12 Select the number of position reference systems required in accordance with the DP class
- 7.13 Use correct thruster allocation for a specific operation and weather conditions
- 7.14 Test vessel's manoeuvring capability during prevailing weather conditions
- 7.15 Determine a Safe Position and minimum distances to stabilize the vessel in DP
- 7.16 Obtain information and clearance from e.g. installation, on issues important for the safe operation of the vessel under DP.

By the completion of the training session or period for DP Bridge Watchkeeping the trainee should be able to:

- 7.17 Demonstrate a continuous awareness of the vessel's status, operation and impact of operating under DP
- 7.18 Recognise the importance of maintaining lookout and awareness of the external situation including weather when controlling a vessel close to installations or other objects
- 7.19 Recognise situations in which to call the Master to the bridge
- 7.20 Log and report DP station keeping events
- 7.21 Monitor position reference systems, sensors and signal quality in anticipation of the possibility of failure causing instant/violent reaction from main engines/thrusters
- 7.22 Monitor power output and thrust
- 7.23 Monitor thruster efficiency for station-keeping at different headings and drafts, which may affect DP Class
- 7.24 Recognise DP-related changes in vessel systems and technical equipment which may affect DP Class
- 7.25 Recognise technical and operational issues which may limit or stop DP operations
- 7.26 Monitor that the DP operating parameters of continuous operating power are not exceeded.

By the completion of the training session or period for Position Keeping the trainee should be able to:

- 7.27 Recognise alarms related to the incorrect operation of the DP-system and maintaining position
- 7.28 Acknowledge alarms within time constraints
- 7.29 Discuss alarms with relevant department
- 7.30 Evaluate the possible consequences of each alarm and possibility to continue the operation
- 7.31 Analyse the consequence analysis alarm
- 7.32 Interpret visual indicators, indicating conditions which may result in malfunction of DP
- 7.33 Monitor movement of the vessel and changes in the position and heading, in keeping with safe excursion limits depending upon the ongoing task/operations
- 7.34 Monitor movement of the object / installation / target
- 7.35 Monitor by various means, changes in distance/heading between object and own vessel (if applicable)
- 7.36 Recognise limitations of vessel movement when having equipment or divers deployed.

By the completion of the training session or period for Environmental Conditions the trainee should be able to:

- 7.37 Recognise changes in environmental conditions
- 7.38 Recognise when environmental conditions become critical with reference to station keeping
- 7.39 Recognise increased importance of situational awareness when operating close to floating objects.

By the completion of the training session or period for Alarms and Indicators the trainee should be able to:

- 7.40 Identify the procedures to follow for DP and non-DP alarms
- 7.41 Identify the procedures for when to change DP Alert status (e.g. from green to amber/yellow, blue/white or red).

By the completion of the training session or period for Change of DP Watch the trainee should be able to:

- 7.42 Prepare a hand-over checklist
- 7.43 Transfer vessel's status and DP-details when handing over the watch (where not covered by the watch- keeping checklist)
- 7.44 Provide an update on the ongoing operation and planned operationalactivities
- 7.45 Review a hand-over checklist
- 7.46 Verify vessel's position or movement and status
- 7.47 Interpret all necessary information of vessel and operation
- 7.48 Take-over / hand over DP-watch in a formal and clear manner
- 7.49 Determine the DP-status and recent occurrences which may have an effect on the DP-operation during the watch.

By the completion of the training session or period for Normal Completion of a DP Operation the trainee should be able to:

- 7.50 Identify safe departure route and best vessel heading for departure
- 7.51 Recognise external dangers prior to departure
- 7.52 Identify an Emergency Escape route which may or may not be the same as the normal departure route
- 7.53 Retrieve Position Reference System Equipment from e.g. the installation or seabed (if applicable and as part of a Departure checklist)
- 7.54 Demonstrate moving to a safe position in appropriate steps
- 7.55 Recover / retract deployed equipment (if applicable).

By the completion of the training session or period for Operating in Joystick Mode (DP Joystick) the trainee should be able to:

- 7.56 Stop the vessel at a pre-determined position
- 7.57 Determine the need to stop the vessel completely before switching to DP control (system specific)
- 7.58 Operate the DP Joystick to maintain position and/or heading in a controlled and safe manner
- 7.59 Operate the DP Joystick to change position and/or heading in a controlled and safe manner
- 7.60 Demonstrate DP Joystick station-keeping of the vessel under prevailing weather conditions.

By the completion of the training session or period for Emergency Situation the trainee should be able to:

- 7.61 Move the vessel to a safe position in a safe and controlled manner
- 7.62 Demonstrate an awareness of the Emergency Escape Route.

By the completion of the training session or period for Emergency Performance/Response the student must demonstrate at least two of the following:

- 7.63 Demonstrate actions in case of unstable Position Reference System(s)
- 7.64 Demonstrate actions when losing Position Reference System(s)
- 7.65 Demonstrate actions if Position Reference System(s) suddenly indicate significant changes in position/range/bearing data
- 7.66 Demonstrate actions in case of error in wind input
- 7.67 Demonstrate actions in case of a DP drive-off
- 7.68 Demonstrate actions in case of a DP drift-off
- 7.69 Demonstrate actions in case of a DP force-off
- 7.70 Demonstrate actions in case of one thruster runoff
- 7.71 Demonstrate actions in case of error in sensor input
- 7.72 Demonstrate the proper sequence of actions if experiencing an onboard emergency which may influence DP-control during DP-operations
- 7.73 Explain actions when losing all DP control functions
Explain the proper sequence of actions if colliding or about to collide with an installation, nearby objects or vessels during DP-operations.

8. COURSE ASSESSMENT

The assessment for the Revalidation Course includes a theoretical (NI online) exam and a practical assessment. Each component must be completed successfully. There is no specific order in which they must be completed. After the course is completed, an entry will be made in the appropriate logbook.

9. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

In order to be awarded a certificate of completion for the Revalidation Course the DPO must pass an online assessment at the training centre.

The exam is composed of multiple choice questions that have already been developed from the Induction Course and the Simulator Course. The online assessment will consist of 30 questions and shall be completed in one hour with a pass mark of 70%.

Students who fail the first attempt are allowed to have another two attempts within six months of the first attempt; however, the second attempt must be undertaken within 96 hours of the first attempt. If the student fails these three attempts, then the student is required to repeat the Revalidation Course and undertake the assessment again.

10. PRACTICAL ASSESSMENT

The practical assessment must be done individually. The practical assessment shall include the following items which the student must pass to be awarded a certificate of completion for the Revalidation Course:

- (i) Complete a DP Checklist
- (ii) Set up the vessel on DP
- (iii) Move the vessel from setup position to a worksite
- (iv) Deal with a system/sensor/thruster failure or environmental change (at least two)

The training centres must develop their own practical exams based upon the course objectives listed above.

The student must pass all the four items listed above. The training centre is responsible to ensure that the assessment is carried out in a professional manner and that the student is assessed with thoroughness in line with the standards of the NI.

10.1 Practical Assessment Guidance for Training Centres

Below you will find guidance for the development and the examination process for the practical assessment for the Revalidation Course.

10.1.1 General Guidance

- a. Duration of practical assessment: Between one and two hours
- b. Pass or fail criteria: This item will be the most challenging. The student performance is evaluated by the instructor and in an ideal world; such an evaluation should be objective. Although the student must pass all items it could be that some items are performed as a “pass” whilst other items could be defined as “fail”. It will be the overall performance of the student which determines if the practical assessment is a pass or fail. Failing for example, to identify a small position deviation from one of the PRS inputs would not necessarily mean that the student failed. Failing to identify that the vessel has lost DP Class and that the vessel is now operating without redundancy, would. Depending on the nature of the fail it is up to the DP Training Centre to determine if the student should be allowed to retake the practical assessment. If the fail is related to safety critical items, as determined by the Training Centre, the student should not be allowed to retake the

- assessment, but should retake the course. Reason(s) for failing the student should be given to the student in writing.
- c. Students who fail at the first attempt, and are allowed to retake the practical assessment, can do this only once. The second attempt must be agreed with the DP Training Centre and carried out at their convenience.

20.1.2 Practical Assessment Scenario Guidance

(i) Exam Scenario

After passing the written exam, each student will randomly draw a number linked to the scenario he/she will be examined on.

Scenarios are to be based on the course training objectives. All scenarios should be equal in complexity.

Each scenario will end with the vessel located at a worksite in close proximity to a platform/structure. This could be a fixed platform, a semi-submersible rig, another vessel, etc.

Based on the task to be performed by the vessel (at the worksite), there should be at least two possible locations where the vessel can be positioned to complete the task (one drift on and one drift off). The student will be expected to choose the better of the two. The following are two examples of scenarios that could be used. The vessel might be required to do an ROV inspection of a platform where there is sufficient tether available to work at both locations. The vessel might be required to position under a crane for cargo operations where there are two cranes available (one upwind and one downwind).

Each centre shall develop its own practical exam scenarios based on the DP equipment fitted and the simulated platforms/structures it has available.

The centre will have 10 to 15 scenarios available for exam purposes. This will permit all students to have a random selection. Multiple scenarios can be created by using the same structure/vessel/task and simply changing the environmental conditions.

Time for planning the practical assessment shall be allocated to the student. Before the exam (20 minutes), each student will be presented with his/her scenario. This will permit the student time to develop a plan as to how they will proceed. One student can carry out the exam while the other is planning, this will save time during the exam process.

Prior to starting the exam, the student will be asked to state the planned vessel position and heading when at the final worksite. The student will also state the direction from which (bearing) he/she will approach the worksite and the desired heading at exercise start. All students will start at the same distance from the worksite. Before starting the exam, the instructor will place the vessel (exercise start position) on the bearing and heading specified by the student.

(ii) Checklist/Set up on DP

The DP checklist below is a sample only. It indicates the extent to which checks are to be conducted and the content required. Each centre will develop its own checklist based on DP equipment fitted, vessel power plant, thrusters, reference systems fitted etc. The flow and layout of the checklist would also be as required by the individual centre. The centre may wish to increase the content of the checklist and is free to do so.

There are items that may be omitted i.e. the below sample has two means of determining vessel capability after worse case failure (DP capability plot and deselecting thrusters). Only one means would be required.

The sample below would take approximately 20 to 25 minutes for someone who is familiar with the DP system/vessel. Ability of the individual student will vary. The students are to use the same checklist for the exam as they do during course exercises. They will also be informed that the checklist is part of the exam.

Some items on the checklist will require the vessel to be set up on DP. Therefore at some point during completion of the checklist, the student will place the vessel in DP mode.

Based on the results of the checklist, the student can request changes to generator, power, switchboard or thruster configurations. The student may also alter the planned approach route and final worksite heading/position, based on the results of the checklist.

(iii) Approach to Worksite

After completing the checklist and set up on DP, the student will move the vessel to the worksite. The speeds and methods used by the individual student will vary. If the vessel is outside the 500m zone at the start, this could take considerable time. As a benchmark, a single move of 500m at 0.25m/sec would require 33 minutes. The actual moves during the exam will be undertaken in increments and at varying speeds, making it difficult to indicate an actual time for this item. To reduce time requirements, for exam purposes, the exam may start at distance of 250 to 300m from the worksite.

(iv) At the Worksite

The actual vessel task at the worksite can be as determined by the training centre. This might be diving operations, ROV operations, cargo operations etc.

The type of practical assessment (ie DP operation) should have been reflected or revised during the Revalidation Course.

The last stage of the exam will be introducing a DP fault/failure or environmental change for the student to deal with.

This specification identifies possible faults and indicates that at least two must be utilised. Both can be introduced after the vessel is on location at the worksite but one must be introduced at this stage. The other can be introduced at any stage in the exam, after the vessel is set up on DP. Considering the above, the exact timing of fault injection and the faults to be used, with a particular scenario, will be determined by the training centre.

(v) Exam Time Required

If the exam starts at a distance of 250m from the worksite, the total time required for the practical exam should be one to two hours per student. The extent to which the simulated DP operation progresses (after positioning at the worksite) is determined by the training centre.

The first student will require more time as he/she would require time to plan (20 minutes). Subsequent students would get the same amount of planning time but would be doing so while another is being examined.

10.1.3 Practical Assessment Mark Sheet Example

Each Training Centre must ensure that the training objectives are assessed in a proper manner. It might be difficult to assess each student on all training objectives. Therefore, it would be recommended that a selection of training objectives should be covered during the assessment.

The tables on the following page show the items to be evaluated during the practical assessment. Exercises are to be structured to enable evaluation for the items listed below.

11. MARK SHEET EXAM NUMBER 1

Practical Assessment DP Revalidation Course

Name of student:	Exercise name/number:	Overall Pass/Fail	Instructor sign
	1		

Task no:	Task description: DP Planning	Pass	Fail
1	Carry out operational planning, risk assessment and hazard identification tasks.		
2	Evaluate most appropriate PRS for the DP operation, in accordance with the DP class.		
3	Determine the most appropriate final working position and heading.		
4	Identify emergency escape route.		
	Additional Comments:		

Task no:	Task description: DP Set Up	Pass	Fail
1	Complete DP checklist with accurate recording of data.		
2	Select DP joystick mode. Operate the DP Joystick to maintain position and/or heading in a controlled and safe manner.		
3	Set up the vessel on DP in a controlled and safe manner.		
4	Use correct thruster allocation for the operational and environmental conditions.		
5	Ensure the vessel is on DP in accordance with the vessel's required class; for the operation being conducted (determine capability).		
6	Determine and set appropriate alarm and warning limits for the operation being conducted.		
7	Select appropriate gain setting.		
	Additional Comments:		

Task no:	Task description: DP Operations	Pass	Fail
1	Move the vessel to the final working location using appropriate movement steps.		
2	Move the vessel to the final working location at safe speed/speeds.		
3	At the final working location, select appropriate and reliable PRS in accordance with the DP class.		
4	Monitor and recognise any changes in position reference system or sensor performance.		
5	Monitor and recognise any change in power or thrust output.		
6	Monitor and recognise any changes in environmental conditions.		
7	Continue to ensure the vessel is on DP in accordance with the vessel's required class, for the operation being conducted (monitor capability).		
	Additional Comments:		

Task no:	Task description: DP Failure Modes	Pass	Fail
1	Recognise and respond to fault/system failure/environmental change and associated alarms. Specify failure mode: _____		
2	Recognise and respond to fault/system failure/environmental change and associated alarms. Specify failure mode: _____		
3	Evaluate the possible consequences of each alarm and the effect on continuing the operation.		
4	Change DP Alert status (e.g. from green to amber/yellow, blue/white or red) to reflect operational condition.		
	Additional Comments:		

12. REVALIDATION COURSE TIMETABLE

Below is a suggested timetable, which can be used for the Revalidation Course.

DAY - 1		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Registration, Introduction – Experience mapping Familiarisation with centre equipment.	Experience mapping would be a vital part of the Course. The previous experience and knowledge of the participants must be addressed and acknowledged during the course.
AM	Exercise briefing and exercise planning	Planning to be monitored by the instructor and guidance given as needed. Guidance can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
Lunch		
PM	Run exercise	Exercise designed to meet course objectives.
PM	Debrief exercise	Debrief can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
PM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.

DAY - 2		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.
AM	Exercise briefing and exercise planning	Planning to be monitored by the instructor and guidance given as needed. Guidance can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
Lunch		
PM	Run exercise	Exercise designed to meet course objectives.
PM	Debrief exercise	Debrief can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
PM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.

DAY - 3		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.
AM	Exercise briefing and exercise planning	Planning to be monitored by the instructor and guidance given as needed. Guidance can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
Lunch		
PM	Run exercise	Exercise designed to meet course objectives.
PM	Debrief exercise	Debrief can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
PM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.

DAY – 4		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.
AM	Exercise briefing and exercise planning	Planning to be monitored by the instructor and guidance given as needed. Guidance can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
Lunch		
PM	Run exercise	Exercise designed to meet course objectives.
PM	Debrief exercise	Debrief can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
PM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.

DAY – 5		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Practical and theoretical examination	Practical examination on a minimum NI Class B Simulator. Theoretical On-Line examination.
Lunch		
PM	Examination continued, if required.	

13. DP CHECKLIST

Below is a suggested DP Checklist, which can be used for the Revalidation Course.

DP Checklist

Date _____ Time _____ Location _____
Position N _____ E _____
Water Depth _____
Lights / Shapes (On/Up) Y / N
Read Latest Forecast Y / N Lamp/Alarm Test Completed & O.K. Y / N

System Setup

Controller Online A B
Operator Station in Use 1 2
Centre of Rotation Selected _____
Speed Setting _____ Knots
Turn Rate Setting _____ °/minute
High Precision Gain Selected _____ Setting: Low Medium High
Customised Gain Selected _____ Setting: Surge ___ Sway ___ Yaw ___

Alarm Limits

Position Alarm Settings Warning Alarm ___ Enabled Y / N
Heading Alarm Settings Warning Alarm ___ Enabled Y / N

Power

Generators Available #1 ___ #2 ___ #3 ___ #4 ___ #5 ___ #6 ___
Generators Online #1 ___ #2 ___ #3 ___ #4 ___ #5 ___ #6 ___
Main Switchboard Split Y / N
UPS Checked & O.K. Y / N

Propulsion

Thrusters Available for DP Control #1 ___ #2 ___ #3 ___ #4 ___ #5 ___ #6 ___ #7 ___
Thrusters Selected #1 ___ #2 ___ #3 ___ #4 ___ #5 ___ #6 ___ #7 ___
Thruster #3 on Bus 1_ Bus 2
Rudders Available for DP Control Port_ Stbd.
Rudders Selected Port_ Stbd.
Thruster Mode Selected _____

Sensors

Gyros Available #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Gyro in Use #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Differences Checked & Acceptable Y / N
 Vessel Heading in Use _____°
 Wind Sensors Available #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Wind Sensor in Use #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Differences Checked & Acceptable Y / N
 Wind Speed & Direction in Use _____Knots _____° True
 VRS Available #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 VRS in Use #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Differences Checked & Acceptable Y / N
 Values Used Heave ___ Pitch ___ Roll ___
 Draught Sensor Available Y / N
 Draught Input Sensor ___ Manual ___ Operational ___ Transit
 Draught Input Checked & Acceptable Y / N Draught in Use _____m

Position Reference Systems

Available In Use (Accuracies Checked & Acceptable)
 Artemis Y / N Y / N
 DGPS 1 Y / N Y / N
 DGPS 2 Y / N Y / N
 Fanbeam Y / N Y / N
 HPR 1 Y / N Y / N Transponders _____
 HPR 2 Y / N Y / N Transponders _____
 Radius Y / N Y / N Transponders _____
 Taut Wire Port Y / N Y / N
 Taut Wire Stbd. Y / N Y / N
 Gate Valves Port: Open / Closed Stbd.: Open / Closed
 HPR Poles Port: Down / Up Stbd.: Down / Up
 ROV Transponder _____
 Co-ordinate System set to Display UTM Y / N Datum Settings Checked & O.K. Y / N

Joystick

Joystick Thrust Reduced_ Full
 Joystick Precision High Speed
 General
 Low Speed
 Joystick Environmental Comp. Surge___ Sway___ Yaw___

Joystick Operational Y / N

Propulsion Status

Thruster Setpoint/Feedback O.K. Y / N

Rudder Setpoint/Feedback O.K. Y / N

Power Status

Power (if Bus is Common): Used ___ Available _____

Power (if Bus is Split): Bus 1 Used ___ Available _____

Bus 2 Used ___ Available _____

Communications Tested & O.K. (as applicable)

Crane Cab/Cabs Y / N

Deck (Pipe/Cable Lay) Y / N DP Status Lights Y / N

Dive Control Y / N DP Status Lights Y / N

Engine Control Room Y / N

ROV Control Y / N DP Status Lights Y / N

Checklists

Dive Checklist Complete Y / N

ROV Checklist Complete Y / N

Engine room Checklist Complete Y / N

Vessel Capability

Consequence Analysis Enabled Y / N

Capability Plot Setup & Checked Y / N

Deselect Thrusters #1, (#3), #5 & #7 (When #3 is connected to BUS1)

Position Maintained Y / N Reselect Thrusters

Deselect Thrusters #2, (#3), #4 & #6 (When #3 is connected to BUS2)

Position Maintained Y / N Reselect Thrusters

Vessel on Auto DP for 30 Minutes Y / N

DP Current _____

Alarms Page Checked Y / N

Printer Online Y / N

Print Status Y / N

Signed	Date
Signed	Date



Annex G

Refresher and Competency Assessment Course

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP REFRESHER AND COMPETENCY ASSESSMENT

© The Nautical Institute 2023

200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom

Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817

www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course		
Title NI DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

Contents

1. Introduction	130
2. Minimum Entry Qualification Requirements	130
3. Number of Hours	130
4. Ratio of Students/Instructors/Equipment	130
5. Delivery Method	130
6. Course Aims	131
7. Course Objectives	131
8. Course Assessment	133
9. Online Assessment	134
10. Practical Assessment	134
11. Mark Sheet Exam Number 1 (Practical Assessment)	138
12. DP Refresher Course Timetable	140
13. DP Checklist	142

1. INTRODUCTION

The Nautical Institute (the NI) has introduced a DP Refresher and Competency assessment course as a result of NI Training centres running the NI DP revalidation course reporting the benefit of using the NI DP Revalidation course as a DP refresher course and competency assessment.

- (i) The Course is an accredited course with the course content and notes controlled by the Nautical Institute. This will ensure an excellent standard across the DP Industry.
- (ii) Course content is to match exactly the NI DP Revalidation course.
- (iii) Course certificate will have the same logo as the NI DP Revalidation course.
- (iv) Certificate name "Nautical Institute DP Refresher and Competency assessment"
- (v) Course is only available for DPOs with current DPO certificates.
- (vi) The course allow DPOs who have not been on working DP vessel a method to refresh their knowledge about DP operations, DP Bridge team work, Emergency DP resource Management and to stay current with the latest industry guidelines.
- (vii) The course has a significant component of simulations which include failures, and this will be of particular benefit to DPOs who work on vessels which are on DP 24/7.

2. MINIMUM ENTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

The minimum entry requirement is a DPO Certificate issued by the NI. The original DPO Certificate should be presented at the DP centre where the DP Refresher Course is completed.

The DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course may be completed at any time as required.

3. NUMBER OF HOURS

A minimum of 34 hours of teaching and simulator time is required for this course which includes the time needed for the examination and assessments. The course must schedule both practical and theoretical aspects with about 50% of the time assigned to each. The course is to be delivered over five days.

4. RATIO OF STUDENTS/INSTRUCTORS/EQUIPMENT

The NI allows a maximum of four students per class being taught by one instructor per one Class B or A Simulator.

By exception and where justified, five or six students may be considered at the discretion of the NI's Accreditation Team, based on the number of simulators in place, rotation of students and the use of the training methodology in place.

When two different types of simulator systems are available in a training centre, the best practice is to keep the trainee on the same simulator throughout the course.

A minimum requirement is to use an NI DP Class B Simulator to correspond with the training objectives for the DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.

5. DELIVERY METHOD

Training will be split equally between theory and practical exercises. Theory may be used to support the practical exercises either as a briefing, a de-briefing or for demonstration purposes.

6. COURSE AIMS

The course is intended for those who have already been issued a DPO Certificate from the NI and required to refresh their knowledge about DP or need to completed high DP simulator because they are on DP 24/7. The overall course aim is to update the DPOs with the latest rules and regulations, position references and sensors, known DP incidents and lessons learned. At the end of the course, the student should:

- 6.1. Have acquired knowledge of the latest rules and regulations
- 6.2. Have acquired knowledge of the latest developments within sensors and PRS
- 6.3. Have acquired knowledge of the latest relevant DP incidents and why they occurred
- 6.4. Be able to recognise the various alarm, warning and information messages
- 6.5. Carry out operational planning, risk assessment and hazard identification tasks
- 6.6. Set up the DP system for a particular task/operation
- 6.7. Decide on courses of action because of systems failure

7. COURSE OBJECTIVES

The following is a list of the objectives which should be attained by the DPOs upon completion of the DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.

By the completion of the training session or period for DP Rules and Regulations the trainee should be able to:

- 7.1 List the various providers of documents containing statutory requirements and guidance relating to DP operations, including:
 - 7.1.1. IMO (including IMO MSC/Circ. 645 of 1994 and 1580 of 2017 Guidelines for Vessels with Dynamic Positioning Systems)
 - 7.1.2. Classification society DP rules
 - 7.1.3. International Marine Contractors Association (IMCA)
 - 7.1.4. Marine Technology Society (MTS)
 - 7.1.5. IMCA and MTS guidelines for ASOG
- 7.2 Explain the purpose of documentation associated with DP operations, such as DP operations manuals, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) and capability plots
- 7.3 Describe the IMO (DP) equipment classes and their application, with reference to the IMO Guidelines for Vessels with DP Systems.
- 7.4 Understand the importance of reporting DP incidents knows where to find DP incident reports and knows how to report DP incidents.

By the completion of the training session or period for DP Sensors and PRS the trainee should be able to:

- 7.5 Describe the following position reference systems commonly associated with DP installations: Differential GNSS, hydroacoustic, INS, taut wire, Artemis, FMCW Radar and laser-based systems.
- 7.6 Describe the failure modes of the following position reference systems: Differential GNSS, hydroacoustic, INS, taut wire, Artemis, FMCW Radar and laser-based systems.
- 7.7 Describe the following sensors associated with DP installations: vertical reference sensor/unit, motion reference unit, gyro compass, wind sensor (anemometer) and draught input sensor. ASOG, TAM and CAM.
- 7.8 Describe the failure modes of the following sensors: vertical reference sensor/unit, motion reference unit, gyro compass, wind sensor (anemometer) and draught input sensor.

By the completion of the training session or period for DP Set Up the trainee should be able to:

- 7.9 Ensure the vessel is on DP in accordance with the vessel's class and the vessel's operation manual. Class approved FMEA and ASOG (Complete DP Checklist)
- 7.10 Determine and set alarm and warning limits
- 7.11 Evaluate most appropriate PRS for specific DP-operations

- 7.12 Select the number of position reference systems required in accordance with the DP class
- 7.13 Use correct thruster allocation for a specific operation and weather conditions
- 7.14 Test vessel's manoeuvring capability during prevailing weather conditions
- 7.15 Determine a Safe Position and minimum distances to stabilize the vessel in DP
- 7.16 Obtain information and clearance from e.g. installation, on issues important for the safe operation of the vessel under DP.

By the completion of the training session or period for DP Bridge Watchkeeping the trainee should be able to:

- 7.17 Demonstrate a continuous awareness of the vessel's status, operation and impact of operating under DP
- 7.18 Recognise the importance of maintaining lookout and awareness of the external situation including weather when controlling a vessel close to installations or other objects
- 7.19 Recognise situations in which to call the Master to the bridge
- 7.20 Log and report DP station keeping events
- 7.21 Monitor position reference systems, sensors and signal quality in anticipation of the possibility of failure causing instant/violent reaction from main engines/thrusters
- 7.22 Monitor power output and thrust
- 7.23 Monitor thruster efficiency for stationkeeping at different headings and drafts, which may affect DP Class
- 7.24 Recognise DP-related changes in vessel systems and technical equipment which may affect DP Class
- 7.25 Recognise technical and operational issues which may limit or stop DP operations
- 7.26 Monitor that the DP operating parameters of continuous operating power are not exceeded.

By the completion of the training session or period for Position Keeping the trainee should be able to:

- 7.27 Recognise alarms related to the incorrect operation of the DP-system and maintaining position
- 7.28 Acknowledge alarms within time constraints
- 7.29 Discuss alarms with relevant department
- 7.30 Evaluate the possible consequences of each alarm and possibility to continue the operation
- 7.31 Analyse the consequence analysis alarm
- 7.32 Interpret visual indicators, indicating conditions which may result in malfunction of DP
- 7.33 Monitor movement of the vessel and changes in the position and heading, in keeping with safe excursion limits depending upon the ongoing task/operations
- 7.34 Monitor movement of the object / installation / target
- 7.35 Monitor by various means, changes in distance/heading between object and own vessel (if applicable)
- 7.36 Recognise limitations of vessel movement when having equipment or divers deployed.

By the completion of the training session or period for Environmental Conditions the trainee should be able to:

- 7.37 Recognise changes in environmental conditions
- 7.38 Recognise when environmental conditions become critical with reference to stationkeeping
- 7.39 Recognise increased importance of situational awareness when operating close to floating objects.

By the completion of the training session or period for Alarms and Indicators the trainee should be able to:

- 7.40 Identify the procedures to follow for DP and non-DP alarms
- 7.41 Identify the procedures for when to change DP Alert status (e.g. from green to amber/yellow, or red).

By the completion of the training session or period for Change of DP Watch the trainee should be able to:

- 7.42 Prepare a hand-over checklist
- 7.43 Transfer vessel's status and DP-details when handing over the watch (where not covered by the watch- keeping checklist)

- 7.44 Provide an update on the ongoing operation and planned operational activities
- 7.45 Review a hand-over checklist
- 7.46 Verify vessel's position or movement and status
- 7.47 Interpret all necessary information of vessel and operation
- 7.48 Take-over / hand over DP-watch in a formal and clear manner
- 7.49 Determine the DP-status and recent occurrences which may have an effect on the DP-operation during the watch.

By the completion of the training session or period for Normal Completion of a DP Operation the trainee should be able to:

- 7.50 Identify safe departure route and best vessel heading for departure
- 7.51 Recognise external dangers prior to departure
- 7.52 Identify an Emergency Escape route which may or may not be the same as the normal departure route
- 7.53 Retrieve Position Reference System Equipment from e.g. the installation or seabed (if applicable and as part of a Departure checklist)
- 7.54 Demonstrate moving to a safe position in appropriate steps
- 7.55 Recover / retract deployed equipment (if applicable).

By the completion of the training session or period for Operating in Joystick Mode (DP Joystick) the trainee should be able to:

- 7.56 Stop the vessel at a pre-determined position
- 7.57 Determine the need to stop the vessel completely before switching to DP control (system specific)
- 7.58 Operate the DP Joystick to maintain position and/or heading in a controlled and safe manner
- 7.59 Operate the DP Joystick to change position and/or heading in a controlled and safe manner
- 7.60 Demonstrate DP Joystick station-keeping of the vessel under prevailing weather conditions.

By the completion of the training session or period for Emergency Situation the trainee should be able to:

- 7.61 Move the vessel to a safe position in a safe and controlled manner
- 7.62 Demonstrate an awareness of the Emergency Escape Route.

By the completion of the training session or period for Emergency Performance/Response the student must demonstrate at least two of the following:

- 7.63 Demonstrate actions in case of unstable Position Reference System(s)
- 7.64 Demonstrate actions when losing Position Reference System(s)
- 7.65 Demonstrate actions if Position Reference System(s) suddenly indicate significant changes in position/range/bearing data
- 7.66 Demonstrate actions in case of error in wind input
- 7.67 Demonstrate actions in case of a DP drive-off
- 7.68 Demonstrate actions in case of a DP drift-off
- 7.69 Demonstrate actions in case of a DP force-off
- 7.70 Demonstrate actions in case of one thruster runoff
- 7.71 Demonstrate actions in case of error in sensor input
- 7.72 Demonstrate the proper sequence of actions if experiencing an onboard emergency which may influence DP-control during DP-operations
- 7.73 Explain actions when losing all DP control functions
- 7.74 Explain the proper sequence of actions if colliding or about to collide with an installation, nearby objects or vessels during DP-operations.

8. COURSE ASSESSMENT

The assessment for the DP Refresher and Competency assessment Course includes a theoretical (NI online) exam and a practical assessment. Each component must be completed successfully. There is no

specific order in which they must be completed. After the course is completed, an entry will be made in the appropriate logbook.

9. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

In order to be awarded a certificate of completion for the DP Refresher and Competency assessment Course the DPO must pass an online assessment at the training centre.

The exam is composed of multiple choice questions that have already been developed from the Basic/Induction Course and the Simulator Course. The online assessment will consist of 30 questions and shall be completed in one hour with a pass mark of 70%.

Students who fail the first attempt are allowed to have another two attempts within six months of the first attempt; however, the second attempt must be undertaken within 96 hours of the first attempt. If the student fails these three attempts, they are student is required to repeat the Refresher course and competency Assessment Course and undertake the assessment again.

10. PRACTICAL ASSESSMENT

The practical assessment must be done individually. The practical assessment shall include the following items which the student must pass to be awarded a certificate of completion for the Course:

- (i) Complete a DP Checklist
- (ii) Set up the vessel on DP
- (iii) Move the vessel from setup position to a worksite
- (iv) Deal with a system/sensor/thruster failure or environmental change (at least two)

The training centres must develop their own practical exams based upon the course objectives listed above.

The student must pass all the four items listed above. The training centre is responsible to ensure that the assessment is carried out in a professional manner and that the student is assessed with thoroughness in line with the standards of the NI.

10.1 Practical Assessment Guidance for Training Centres

Below you will find guidance for the development and the examination process for the practical assessment for the DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.

10.1.1 General Guidance

- Duration of practical assessment: Between one and two hours
- Pass or fail criteria: This item will be the most challenging. The student performance is evaluated by the instructor and in an ideal world; such an evaluation should be objective. Although the student must pass all items it could be that some items are performed as a “pass” whilst other items could be defined as “fail”. It will be the overall performance of the student which determines if the practical assessment is a pass or fail. Failing for example, to identify a small position deviation from one of the PRS inputs would not necessarily mean that the student failed. Failing to identify that the vessel has lost DP Class and that the vessel is now operating without redundancy, would. Depending on the nature of the fail it is up to the DP Training Centre to determine if the student should be allowed to retake the practical assessment. If the fail is related to safety critical items, as determined by the Training Centre, the student should not be allowed to retake the assessment, but should retake the course. Reason(s) for failing the student should be given to the student in writing.
- Students who fail at the first attempt, and are allowed to retake the practical assessment, can do this only once. The second attempt must be agreed with the DP Training Centre and carried out at their convenience.

10.1.2 Practical Assessment Scenario Guidance

(i) Exam Scenario

After passing the written exam, each student will randomly draw a number linked to the scenario he/she will be examined on.

Scenarios are to be based on the course training objectives. All scenarios should be equal in complexity.

Each scenario will end with the vessel located at a worksite in close proximity to a platform/structure. This could be a fixed platform, a semi-submersible rig, another vessel, etc.

Based on the task to be performed by the vessel (at the worksite), there should be at least two possible locations where the vessel can be positioned to complete the task (one drift on and one drift off). The student will be expected to choose the better of the two. The following are two examples of scenarios that could be used. The vessel might be required to do an ROV inspection of a platform where there is sufficient tether available to work at both locations. The vessel might be required to position under a crane for cargo operations where there are two cranes available (one upwind and one downwind).

Each centre shall develop its own practical exam scenarios based on the DP equipment fitted and the simulated platforms/structures it has available.

The centre will have 10 to 15 scenarios available for exam purposes. This will permit all students to have a random selection. Multiple scenarios can be created by using the same structure/vessel/task and simply changing the environmental conditions.

Time for planning the practical assessment shall be allocated to the student. Before the exam (20 minutes), each student will be presented with his/her scenario. This will permit the student time to develop a plan as to how they will proceed. One student can carry out the exam while the other is planning, this will save time during the exam process.

Prior to starting the exam, the student will be asked to state the planned vessel position and heading when at the final worksite. The student will also state the direction from which (bearing) he/she will approach the worksite and the desired heading at exercise start. All students will start at the same distance from the worksite. Before starting the exam, the instructor will place the vessel (exercise start position) on the bearing and heading specified by the student.

(ii) Checklist/Set up on DP

The DP checklist below is a sample only. It indicates the extent to which checks are to be conducted and the content required. Each centre will develop its own checklist based on DP equipment fitted, vessel power plant, thrusters, reference systems fitted, etc. The flow and layout of the checklist would also be as required by the individual centre. The centre may wish to increase the content of the checklist and is free to do so.

There are items that may be omitted i.e. the below sample has two means of determining vessel capability after worse case failure (DP capability plot and deselection thrusters). Only one means would be required.

The sample below would take approximately 20 to 25 minutes for someone who is familiar with the DP system/vessel. Ability of the individual student will vary. The students are to use the same checklist for the exam as they do during course exercises. They will also be informed that the checklist is part of the exam.

Some items on the checklist will require the vessel to be set up on DP. Therefore at some point during completion of the checklist, the student will place the vessel in DP mode.

Based on the results of the checklist, the student can request changes to generator, power, switchboard or thruster configurations. The student may also alter the planned approach route and final worksite heading/position, based on the results of the checklist.

(iii) Approach to worksite

After completing the checklist and set up on DP, the student will move the vessel to the worksite. The speeds and methods used by the individual student will vary. If the vessel is outside the 500m zone at the start, this could take considerable time. As a benchmark, a single move of 500m at 0.25m/sec would require 33 minutes. The actual moves during the exam will be undertaken in increments and at varying speeds, making it difficult to indicate an actual time for this item. To reduce time requirements, for exam purposes, the exam may start at distance of 250 to 300m from the worksite.

(iv) At the Worksite

The actual vessel task at the worksite can be as determined by the training centre. This might be diving operations, ROV operations, cargo operations, etc.

The type of practical assessment (i.e. DP operation) should have been reflected or revised during the DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.

The last stage of the exam will be introducing a DP fault/failure or environmental change for the student to deal with.

This specification identifies possible faults and indicates that at least two must be utilised. Both can be introduced after the vessel is on location at the worksite but one must be introduced at this stage. The other can be introduced at any stage in the exam,

after the vessel is set up on DP. Considering the above, the exact timing of fault injection and the faults to be used, with a particular scenario, will be determined by the training centre.

(v)

Exam Time
Required

If the exam starts at a distance of 250m from the worksite, the total time required for the practical exam should be one to two hours per student. The extent to which the simulated DP operation progresses (after positioning at the worksite) is determined by the training centre.

The first student will require more time as he/she would require time to plan (20 minutes). Subsequent students would get the same amount of planning time but would be doing so while another is being examined.

10.1.3 *Practical Assessment Mark Sheet Example*

Each Training Centre must ensure that the training objectives are assessed in a proper manner. It might be difficult to assess each student on all training objectives. Therefore, it would be recommended that a selection of training objectives should be covered during the assessment.

Below are the items to be evaluated during the practical assessment. Exercises are to be structured to enable evaluation for the items listed below.

11. MARK SHEET EXAM NUMBER 1

Practical Assessment DP Refresher and competency assessment Course

Name of student:	Exercise name/number:	Overall Pass/Fail	Instructor sign
	1		

Task no:	Task description: DP Planning	Pass	Fail
1	Carry out operational planning, risk assessment and hazard identification tasks.		
2	Evaluate most appropriate PRS for the DP operation, in accordance with the DP class.		
3	Determine the most appropriate final working position and heading.		
4	Identify emergency escape route.		
	Additional Comments:		

Task no:	Task description: DP Set Up	Pass	Fail
1	Complete DP checklist with accurate recording of data.		
2	Select DP joystick mode. Operate the DP Joystick to maintain position and/or heading in a controlled and safe manner.		
3	Set up the vessel on DP in a controlled and safe manner.		
4	Use correct thruster allocation for the operational and environmental conditions.		
5	Ensure the vessel is on DP in accordance with the vessel's required class; for the operation being conducted (determine capability).		
6	Determine and set appropriate alarm and warning limits for the operation being conducted.		
7	Select appropriate gain setting.		
	Additional Comments:		

Task no:	Task description: DP Operations	Pass	Fail
1	Move the vessel to the final working location using appropriate movement steps.		
2	Move the vessel to the final working location at safe speed/speeds.		
3	At the final working location, select appropriate and reliable PRS in accordance with the DP class.		
4	Monitor and recognise any changes in position reference system or sensor performance.		
5	Monitor and recognise any change in power or thrust output.		
6	Monitor and recognise any changes in environmental conditions.		
7	Continue to ensure the vessel is on DP in accordance with the vessel's required class, for the operation being conducted (monitor capability).		
	Additional Comments:		

Task no:	Task description: DP Failure Modes	Pass	Fail
1	Recognise and respond to fault/system failure/environmental change and associated alarms. Specify failure mode:		
2	Recognise and respond to fault/system failure/environmental change and associated alarms. Specify failure mode:		
3	Evaluate the possible consequences of each alarm and the effect on continuing the operation.		
4	Change DP Alert status (e.g. from green to amber/yellow, or red) to reflect operational condition.		
	Additional Comments:		

12. DP REFRESHER COURSE TIMETABLE

Below is a *suggested* timetable, which can be used for the DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.

DAY - 1		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Registration, Introduction – Experience mapping Familiarisation with centre equipment.	Experience mapping would be a vital part of the Course. The previous experience and knowledge of the participants must be addressed and acknowledged during the course.
AM	Exercise briefing and exercise planning	Planning to be monitored by the instructor and guidance given as needed. Guidance can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
Lunch		
PM	Run exercise	Exercise designed to meet course objectives.
PM	Debrief exercise	Debrief can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
PM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.

DAY - 2		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.
AM	Exercise briefing and exercise planning	Planning to be monitored by the instructor and guidance given as needed. Guidance can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
Lunch		
PM	Run exercise	Exercise designed to meet course objectives.
PM	Debrief exercise	Debrief can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
PM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.

DAY - 3		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.
AM	Exercise briefing and exercise planning	Planning to be monitored by the instructor and guidance given as needed. Guidance can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
Lunch		
PM	Run exercise	Exercise designed to meet course objectives.
PM	Debrief exercise	Debrief can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
PM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.

DAY - 4		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.
AM	Exercise briefing and exercise planning	Planning to be monitored by the instructor and guidance given as needed. Guidance can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
Lunch		
PM	Run exercise	Exercise designed to meet course objectives.
PM	Debrief exercise	Debrief can be tailored to incorporate course objectives where the opportunity presents.
PM	Lecture covering course objectives	Centre to decide content of the lecture, keeping to course objectives.

DAY - 5		
Time	Subject	Comments
AM	Practical and theoretical examination	Practical examination on a minimum NI Class B Simulator. Theoretical On-Line examination.
Lunch		
PM	Examination continued, if required.	

13. DP CHECKLIST

Below is a *suggested* DP Checklist, which can be used for the Refresher Course.

DP Checklist

Date _____ Time _____ Location _____

Position N _____ E _____

Water Depth _____

Lights / Shapes (On/Up) Y / N

Read Latest Forecast Y / N Lamp/Alarm Test Completed & O.K. Y / N

System Setup

Controller Online A B

Operator Station in Use 1 2

Centre of Rotation Selected _____

Speed Setting _____Knots

Turn Rate Setting _____°/minute

High Precision Gain Selected _____ Setting: Low Medium High

Customised Gain Selected _____ Setting: Surge__Sway__Yaw _____

Alarm Limits

Position Alarm Settings Warning Alarm__Enabled Y / N

Heading Alarm Settings Warning Alarm__Enabled Y / N

Power

Generators Available #1 ___ #2 ___ #3 ___ #4 ___ #5 ___ #6

Generators Online #1 ___ #2 ___ #3 ___ #4 ___ #5 ___ #6

Main Switchboard Split Y / N

UPS Checked & O.K. Y / N

Propulsion

Thrusters Available for DP Control #1 ___ #2 ___ #3 ___ #4 ___ #5 ___ #6 ___ #7

Thrusters Selected #1 ___ #2 ___ #3 ___ #4 ___ #5 ___ #6 ___ #7

Thruster #3 on Bus 1_ Bus 2

Rudders Available for DP Control Port_ Stbd.

Rudders Selected Port_ Stbd.

Thruster Mode Selected _____

Sensors

Gyros Available #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Gyro in Use #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Differences Checked & Acceptable Y / N
 Vessel Heading in Use _____°
 Wind Sensors Available #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Wind Sensor in Use #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Differences Checked & Acceptable Y / N
 Wind Speed & Direction in Use _____Knots _____° True
 VRS Available #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 VRS in Use #1 ___ #2 ___ #3
 Differences Checked & Acceptable Y / N
 Values Used Heave ___ Pitch ___ Roll ___
 Draught Sensor Available Y / N
 Draught Input Sensor ___ Manual ___ Operational ___ Transit
 Draught Input Checked & Acceptable Y / N Draught in Use _____m

Position Reference Systems

Available In Use (Accuracies Checked & Acceptable)
 Artemis Y / N Y / N
 DGPS 1 Y / N Y / N
 DGPS 2 Y / N Y / N
 Fanbeam Y / N Y / N
 HPR 1 Y / N Y / N Transponders _____
 HPR 2 Y / N Y / N Transponders _____
 Radius Y / N Y / N Transponders _____
 Taut Wire Port Y / N Y / N
 Taut Wire Stbd. Y / N Y / N
 Gate Valves Port: Open / Closed Stbd.: Open / Closed
 HPR Poles Port: Down / Up Stbd.: Down / Up
 ROV Transponder _____
 Co-ordinate System set to Display UTM Y / N Datum Settings Checked & O.K. Y / N

Joystick

Joystick Thrust Reduced_ Full
 Joystick Precision High Speed
 General
 Low Speed
 Joystick Environmental Comp. Surge____ Sway____ Yaw ____
 Joystick Operational Y / N

Propulsion Status

Thruster Setpoint/Feedback O.K. Y / N

Rudder Setpoint/Feedback O.K. Y / N

Power Status

Power (if Bus is Common): Used ___ Available _____

Power (if Bus is Split): Bus 1 Used ___ Available _____

Bus 2 Used ___ Available _____

Communications Tested & O.K. (as applicable)

Crane Cab/Cabs Y / N

Deck (Pipe/Cable Lay) Y / N DP Status Lights Y / N

Dive Control Y / N DP Status Lights Y / N

Engine Control Room Y / N

ROV Control Y / N DP Status Lights Y / N

Checklists

Dive Checklist Complete Y / N

ROV Checklist Complete Y / N

Engine room Checklist Complete Y / N

Vessel Capability

Consequence Analysis Enabled Y / N

Capability Plot Setup & Checked Y / N

Deselect Thrusters #1, **(#3)**, #5 & #7 (When #3 is connected to BUS1)

Position Maintained Y / N Reselect Thrusters

Deselect Thrusters #2, **(#3)**, #4 & #6 (When #3 is connected to BUS2)

Position Maintained Y / N Reselect Thrusters

Vessel on Auto DP for 30 Minutes Y / N

DP Current _____

Alarms Page Checked Y / N

Printer Online Y / N

Print Status Y / N

Signed	Date
Signed	Date

Annex H

DP Emergency Shiphandling Course

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP EMERGENCY SHIPHANDLING COURSE

© The Nautical Institute 2023
200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817
www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

NI DP Emergency Shiphandling Course		
Title NI DP Emergency Shiphandling Course	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

Contents

1. Introduction	149
2. Minimum Entry Requirements	149
3. Course Aims	149
4. Course Objectives	149
5. Learning Objectives	150
6. Number of Hours	152
7. Ratio of Students/Instructor/Equipment	152
8. Instructor Qualifications	153
9. Delivery Method	153
10. Course Assessment	153
11. Online Assessment	153
12. Practical Assessment	153
13. Specific Equipment Requirements	153
14. Appendix 1 to DP Emergency Shiphandling – Learning and Proficiency Outcomes	154
15. Appendix 2 to DP Emergency Shiphandling – Course Structure	155

1. INTRODUCTION

The Nautical Institute (The NI) DP Emergency Shiphandling Course has been designed to provide industry guidance for participants who engage in manual ship handling activities in vessels operating in Dynamic Positioning mode. The course will enhance the safety of navigation in confined water and in close quarter to oilfield structure to increase the O.O.W. / DPO situation awareness, risk assessment and management under different emergency situation and environmental conditions. It covers the learning objectives, practical assessment, the assessment skills tables and information about continuous assessment.

The expectation is that the participant will have successfully completed a Dynamic Positioning Operator training programme. The course is suitable for DPOs seeking to enhance their skills and suitable for experienced DPOs who may require refreshing their manual shiphandling skills and Officers new to offshore vessels

The course will cover shiphandling duties on DP vessels.

The programme involves a course of study with continuous assessment during the course. The overall emphasis of the course is:

- 1.1. To provide emergency shiphandling training for certificated and prospective DPOs
- 1.2. DP vessel ship handling knowledge and practical exercises for deck officers and Masters.
- 1.3. To use this course in compliance with on-board competency assessment as per:
 - 1.3.1. IMCA M117 The training and experience of key DP Personnel,
 - 1.3.2. IMCA C002 IMCA Guidance on Competency Assurance and Assessment – Marine Division
 - 1.3.3. IMCA C007 Guidance on Assessor Training.
 - 1.3.4. STCW Table A-II/1
- 1.4. Ensure that candidates are prepared for emergency situations in which manual ship handling techniques are required AND the circumstances in which the change to manual should not be made.
- 1.5. The course is comprised of two parts
 - 1.5.1. Classroom – Instruction (Theoretical part maybe conducted on the Navigational Bridge (Simulator) to have more ship like atmosphere and to have descriptive materials at hand, immediate use of material during briefing and debriefing of theory and exercise) and;
 - 1.5.2. Simulator - Upon successful completion of the course the participants will be able to demonstrate competence in a number of ship handling emergency scenarios. The participants will be proficient in the conning of the vessel in different operational situations and loss of equipment.

2. MINIMUM ENTRY QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

The minimum entry requirement is that participants should hold a deck Officer Certificate (Officer of the watch (OOW), Chief Mate, Master or Cadets) **or** DPO qualification.

3. COURSE AIMS

The aims of the course are to give the student the following:

- 3.1. Confidence to respond appropriately to major failure in the Dynamic Positioning control systems
- 3.2. To be able to make the decision when to change to Manual control
- 3.3. An improved understanding of shiphandling in the context of offshore operations
- 3.4. Experience of keeping the vessel safe through manual shiphandling skills in a range of conditions

4. COURSE OBJECTIVES

The course includes conventional and azimuth propulsion simulation, use of thrusters, manoeuvring in sheltered waters and offshore environments including close quarters manoeuvring, holding a vessel in the one position after an emergency and operating with reduced machinery capability.

The theory content will revise basic principles of ship handling including:

- 4.1. Discussion of wind/current, and their influence on the operation in adverse weather/wind condition
- 4.2. Planning of (safe) operation
- 4.3. Manoeuvring theory with focus on Offshore Support Vessels
- 4.4. The effects of displacement, draught, trim, speed, velocity, kinetic energy and under-keel clearance on various manoeuvres, squat effect, turning circles and stopping distance.
- 4.5. The importance of the pivot point and effecting ship handling on vessels that are moving and not steaming.
- 4.6. The effect of current, wind and waves on the vessel's capabilities when vessel is on different headings.

Specific focus on offshore activities will include:

- 4.7. The effect and interaction between different type of rudders and propellers, thrusters and their operational advantages and limitations
- 4.8. Advantages and Disadvantages of different types of thrusters.
- 4.9. Contingency planning in case of thruster, rudder and/or propeller failure.
- 4.10. Contingency operation in the event of a partial blackout
- 4.11. Correct procedures for changeover between manual, joystick and dynamic positioning manoeuvring mode
- 4.12. Effect of a loss of heading when on DP and vessel turning beam on to conditions
- 4.13. Safe operation in different weather conditions
- 4.14. Thruster loss at low speed
- 4.15. Maneuvering without bow thrusters
- 4.16. Emergency ship handling after a worst-case failure.
- 4.17. Stopping distance when maintaining heading.
- 4.18. Effect of external forces on a vessel.

Documentation

Relevant ship characteristics and capabilities will be provided for vessels used for exercises on the simulator. Students will have access to examples of sea trial reports, pilot cards, capability plots and other relevant maneuvering information.

Safety

The course will cover critical safety-related aspects including:

- 4.19. Use of emergency backup systems.
- 4.20. Holding position in open water and in channels after system failure.
- 4.21. Thruster emergency stops
- 4.22. Alarm associated with propulsion systems

5. LEARNING OBJECTIVES

The expected learning outcome is that the students will be able to describe or demonstrate the following:

Vessel Machinery Characteristics

- 5.1. Types of Main Propulsion
 - 5.1.1. Describe use of the major types of main propulsion systems including:
 - (i) Conventional twin/single-screw
 - (ii) Azimuthing propulsion
 - 5.1.2. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of the major types of main propulsion systems.
 - 5.1.3. Utilise the features of various azimuth type propulsion systems.
- 5.2. Propellers
 - 5.2.1. Understand the difference between fixed-pitch and controllable pitch propulsion (CPP) propellers.
 - 5.2.2. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of fixed-pitch and controllable pitch propellers.
- 5.3. Azimuthing Bow Thrusters
 - 5.3.1. Describe the benefits of using azimuthing bow thrusters including their use in pulling power and maneuverability when pivot point is on the stern.

- 5.4. Tunnel Thrusters
 - 5.4.1. Describe the advantages and disadvantages of tunnel thrusters.
 - 5.4.2. Describe the differences between fixed-pitch and controllable pitch tunnel thrusters.
 - 5.4.3. Identify how the characteristics of water flow, hull design and speed of the vessel affect the efficiency and effectiveness of a tunnel thruster.
- 5.5. Rudders
 - 5.5.1. Describe the use of different configurations and types of rudders including: high-lift rudder, fishtail, conventional rudders and split rudders to increase side thrust.
 - 5.5.2. Understand the advantages and disadvantages of each rudder type.
- 5.6. Power Management Systems (PMS)
 - 5.6.1. Describe the functionality of a PMS.
 - 5.6.2. Describe and understand how the PMSs may affect power availability in an emergency shiphandling situation.

Vessel Manoeuvring Characteristics

- 5.7. Pivot Point of the vessel
 - 5.7.1. Describe the effect that the use of different thrusters located at different positions on the hull has on the pivot points.
 - 5.7.2. Describe the effect that trim has on a vessel's Manoeuvring characteristics.
- 5.8. Environmental Forces
 - 5.8.1. Describe an understanding of the effect that Wind, Sea and Current has on a vessel's Manoeuvring characteristics
 - 5.8.2. Describe an understanding of the forces of wind and current based on the ship's hull coefficient and wind and current force and relative direction.
- 5.9. Other Factors
 - 5.9.1. Describe the ability to maneuver a vessel under varying environmental, hydrodynamic and ship pivot point conditions

Vessel Manoeuvring Modes

- 5.10. Traditional Manoeuvring
 - 5.10.1. Describe the process of manual ship handling and station-keeping using individual thrusters.
 - 5.10.2. Describe proper use of thrusters, rudders and Azimuthing propulsion systems to maneuver a vessel in varying sea conditions with no defects.
 - 5.10.3. Describe the use of fixed pitch and CPP Azimuth thrusters with and without biasing
 - 5.10.4. Describe the standard Offshore use of the aft control to berth and unberth
- 5.11. Heading Control and Joystick Manoeuvring
 - 5.11.1. Describe changing centre of rotation and power requirements
 - 5.11.2. Describe advantages of a set heading
 - 5.11.3. Describe an understanding of the difference between an Independent Joystick and a DP system joystick
 - 5.11.4. Describe the importance of setting centre rotation to the centre of the vessel
 - 5.11.5. Describe the correct use of weather and data inputs as these relate to heading control.
- 5.12. DP Manoeuvring
 - 5.12.1. Describe changing rotation centres and power requirements of a DP system
 - 5.12.2. Describe advantages of set heading when using a DP system
 - 5.12.3. Describe the ability to maneuver using Joystick under varying environmental, hydrodynamic and ship pivot point conditions.

Operating Procedures & Risk Assessment

- 5.13. Operating Procedures & Risk Assessment:
 - 5.13.1. Describe the importance of procedures and safety guidelines as they apply to offshore marine operations. IMCA, MTS and Guidelines for Offshore Marine Operations (GOMO)

- 5.13.2. Describe the importance of industry best-practice in establishing a safe working environment.
- 5.13.3. Understand the use of risk assessment processes and the benefits of assessing the risks in mitigating hazards.
- 5.14. Company Specific Procedures with respect to industry best practices
 - 5.14.1. Discuss the procedural considerations for operating alongside a platform
 - 5.14.2. Describe scenarios when an operation may be suspended
 - 5.14.3. Define risk assessment and management of change as applied to a company's procedures
 - 5.14.4. Describe the ability to apply procedures and risk assessments for a specific operation.
 - 5.14.5. Describe ASOG, CAM and TAM modes

Special Manoeuvring Scenarios including Emergency Shiphandling

- 5.15. Working alongside an installation
 - 5.15.1. Define the information required before approaching an installation.
 - 5.15.2. Define the information that may be found on a rig data card
 - 5.15.3. Utilise the information from current and detailed weather reports
 - 5.15.4. Describe the importance of crane information
 - 5.15.5. Describe the process for setting up on "Drift ON" and "Drift OFF" side working.
 - 5.15.6. Describe the ability to follow approach and departure procedures.
 - 5.15.7. Describe the effect of changing trim and excessive trim
- 5.16. Operating with reduced equipment due to equipment failure
 - 5.16.1. Describe the effect that a loss of bow thrusters on a azimuth propulsion ship may have on maneuverability and station keeping
 - 5.16.2. Describe the effect that a loss of stern thrusters on conventional twin-screw vessel may have on maneuverability and station keeping
 - 5.16.3. Manoeuvre using only azimuth thrusters (biasing and non-biasing techniques)
 - 5.16.4. Describe the use of engines and rudders in the event of thruster failure.
 - 5.16.5. Describe the ability to overcome equipment failure while maintaining safety of vessel.
 - 5.16.6. Describe actions to be taken after DP failures with the simulator in DP auto mode. Important the student does not change to manual unless a complete failure of the DP system. i.e. vessel to be left in DP control after worst case failure and only change to manual if vessel is not holding heading and position.

6. NUMBER OF HOURS

The course will be of at least 4 days' duration with a minimum of 32 hours' instruction, with at least 65% of the time assigned to practical ship handling exercises¹.

7. RATIO OF STUDENTS/INSTRUCTORS/EQUIPMENT

The course will be run in English. The student-to-instructor/simulator ratio will be a maximum of 3 students to one instructor/simulator.

Course to be conducted at a Nautical Institute accredited Training centre. The Instructor must be appropriately qualified and experienced including qualifications as a simulation instructor and relevant seagoing professional qualifications

The instructor may be assisted by a Ship's Master experienced in offshore vessel shiphandling.

¹The Nautical Institute will consider submissions for a shorter course with fewer students provided that a minimum of 9 hours actual bridge exercise time in control of the ship is assigned to each participant

8. INSTRUCTOR QUALIFICATIONS

Instructors must be approved instructors under the NI DPO Scheme.

The instructor/s delivering the course must be approved as an instructor at a NI accredited training centre. He/she must be able to demonstrate that they possess the adequate ship handling knowledge which affirms them to be sufficiently competent to deliver the course.

9. DELIVERY METHOD

The course will be a blend of learning provided by theory-based instruction with guided practical simulator-based exercises giving a balance of lectures, instruction and practical assessments. This will be achieved through a concentrated period of exercises on a DP equipped ship handling simulator, supported by a program of lectures and instruction. This course may also be delivered, in part, using individual computers for training.

10. COURSE ASSESSMENT

The course will include both a theoretical and practical assessment.

11. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

An NI multiple-choice online assessment will be completed by each student at the end of the course. Student who fail at the first attempt are allowed to have another two attempts within six months of the first attempt; however, the second attempt must be undertaken within 96 hours of the first attempt. Failing these three initial attempts, the student is required to repeat the Shiphandling Course and undertake the assessment again.

12. PRACTICAL ASSESSMENT

Practical assessments will be based on the conduct of each exercise and will determine the candidate's preparedness for manual shiphandling in emergency situations. The training centres must develop their own practical exams based upon the course objectives listed above and Course Skills Table below.

The practical assessment must be done individually. As a minimum, the exam must require the student to hold station after a DP emergency (for a specified period of time) and then move the vessel to a safe location under manual control. The time period for holding station will be dependent on the time required to abandon the operation underway at the time of the failure.

The training centre is responsible to ensure that the assessment is carried out in a professional manner and that the student is assessed with thoroughness in line with the standards of the NI. Candidates who successfully complete the online examination and practical assessments will receive a completion certificate. Unsuccessful candidates will be advised to seek further training to meet the particular needs.

13. SPECIFIC EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

Simulator equipment required to run the course:

13.1 Nautical Institute Shiphandling Simulator OR a simulator that will match the requirement of NI Shiphandling simulator

14. APPENDIX 1 TO DP EMERGENCY SHIPHANDLING - LEARNING AND PROFICIENCY OUTCOMES

S= Skilled

K=Knowledgeable

A= Aware

DP Emergency Manoeuvring Course Skills Table

The course will include exercises using a variety of propulsion control techniques including:

- Change over procedures from DP to manual
- Emergency on DP controller
- Joystick
- Manual manoeuvring
- Emergency operation
- Thruster emergency stops
- Emergency Bridge resource management

Training and practical sessions should address skills in a variety of environmental conditions including daylight and darkness.

Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence (To be completed by the Centre)	Criteria for evaluating competence (To be completed by the Centre)
Control		
Familiar with the operation and testing procedures of all bridge manoeuvring equipment		
Steering, main engine and thruster control systems fully operational in manual control only.		
Bring the vessel to a complete stop so she is making no way through the water in minimum time without over use of engines.		
Knowledge of propulsion/steering systems and their controls including partial blackout or loss of power contingencies and emergency control systems.		
Controlling the vessel with independent propulsion units		
Controlling the vessel with joystick		
Maintaining the vessel in one position without changing the heading, in the vicinity of a fixed reference point/object with full and restricted propulsion availability		
Manoeuvring the vessel to Port and Starboard or fore and aft keeping the heading within 10 degrees, in the vicinity of a fixed reference point/object with full and restricted propulsion		

Transferring in and out of DP to joystick to manual control.		
Manoeuvring and controlling the vessel as listed above, after (WCF) Worst Case failure of propulsion		
Manoeuvring the vessel in DP DR Mode after loss of all position reference systems.		
Demonstrate how to allow for prevailing wind, currents, tidal stream and expected changes		
Demonstrate situational awareness in respect of subsea pipelines, wellhead and platform risers locations		
Emergency planning		
Partial loss of propulsion power		
Sudden changes in wind direction/strength		
Aware of the actions in case of emergency when vessel is in DP auto mode ie WCF, Thruster, generators and Steering Failure etc.		
Manoeuvring and controlling the vessel (box patterns/heading changes) in the vicinity of a fixed reference point/object or by using DGNS with full or restricted propulsion availability		

EXAMPLE SIMULATOR EXERCISES FOR SHIP HANDLING

Trainee must be able to demonstrate:

- 14.1 Setup a vessel ready for emergency departure from installations
- 14.2 Appropriate initial actions in response to system failure
- 14.3 Holding the vessel in the one position and keeping the heading within 10 degrees in good and adverse weather/wind condition only using CPP/FPP Azimuths and thrusters after a worst case failure. Monitor vessel speed with DGPS or DP screen.
- 14.4 Moving the vessel sideway away from danger only using CPP/FPP Azimuths and thrusters after a worst case failure
- 14.5 The importance of situational awareness both visually and with electronic aids
- 14.6 Emergency DP Bridge Resource Management

15. APPENDIX 2 TO DP EMERGENCY SHIPHANDLING - COURSE STRUCTURE

The course must be a minimum of 32 hours duration including the assessment periods and must have a minimum of 20 hours assigned to exercises in the simulator.²

²The Nautical Institute will consider submissions for a shorter course with fewer students provided that a minimum of 9 hours actual bridge exercise time in control of the ship is assigned to each participant

Annex I

Training and Certification Scheme for Key Technical DP Personnel (the DP Vessel Maintainer Course)

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE TRAINING AND CERTIFICATION SCHEME FOR KEY TECHNICAL DP PERSONNEL (THE DP VESSEL MAINTAINER COURSE)

© The Nautical Institute 2023
200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817
www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

Training and Certification Scheme For Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer Course)		
Title	Version	Date
Training and Certification Scheme For Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer Course)	1	20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v2 (January 2022)	New content v1 (January 2023)
163	Revalidation		Revalidation matrix table included.
164	Grandfather Entry		Expiry date of grandfather entry included.

Contents

1. Introduction	160
2. Development of the Scheme	160
3. The Role of The NI	160
4. International Safety Management (ISM) Code and DP Training	160
5. Scheme Overview	161
6. Training Scheme	161
7. Scheme Layout	163
8. Minimum Entry Requirements	163
9. Revalidation	163
10. Grandfather Entry	164
11. Online Assessment	164
12. Appendix 1 to Training and Certification Scheme For Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer Course) – Training, Accreditation & Requirements	166
13. Appendix 2 to Training and Certification Scheme For Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer Course) – Model Course	168

1. INTRODUCTION

This document provides guidance on the Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme For Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer' Course) for onboard Technical Staff wishing to gain the Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme For Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer' Course) and training providers wishing to be accredited to deliver Nautical Institute Key Technical DP Personnel Training – DP Vessel Maintainers' Part One Theory.

Short code for this scheme is DPVM.

This accreditation scheme has been developed to cover IMCA M 117 - The Training and Experience of Key DP Personnel section 6.4 Training Courses for Key Technical DP Personnel and Appendix Two and Appendix Three. The scheme also taking into consideration the following documents.

OCIMF Dynamic Positioning Assurance Framework Risk-Based guidance 2016, OCIMF DP FMEA Assurance Framework Risk Based Guidance 2020, MTS- Guidance for Professional Development of DP Personal -PDDP2 and the Nautical Institute course "DP Knowledge for technical staff".

The course is designed to provide technical Staff with the knowledge required to understand the redundancy concept for DP operations. The course is for Technical staff that have a good knowledge of ships systems and therefore only covers the redundancy aspect of on-board systems to ensure safe DP operations.

A DP vessel depends on redundancy of all systems on-board to ensure Safe operations. Technical staff need to be able to identify the correct redundant setup of all systems, identify loss of redundancy in any system and therefore understand when a vessel may have to suspend operations.

2. DEVELOPMENT OF THE SCHEME

The scheme was developed based on feedback from the Industry, Students that have taken the DP Knowledge for Technical Staff course and the NI Instructors that conducted the course.

The scheme consists of:

- A training centre course based on the NI DP knowledge for Technical staff that has been refined after feedback.
- The NI Online exam, which was part of the course, with additional questions.
- A requirement for onboard DP seatime.
- Completion of a task logbook to record vessel specific training.

This document contains full details.

3. THE ROLE OF THE NI

The Nautical Institute facilitates and administers the accreditation of Dynamic Positioning training centres and the certification of DP operators as per the standard agreed by industry and flag administrations. The DP Vessel Maintainer scheme will add a holistic approach covering both Deck and Engine room departments for the safe operation of a DP vessel.

4. INTERNATIONAL SAFETY MANAGEMENT (ISM) CODE AND DP TRAINING

The scheme is considered as training towards the Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme For Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer' Course).

Further training and experience and company competency assessment should be provided by the company as per IMCA M117 guidelines and the ISM Code.

The objectives of the ISM Code are to ensure safety of life at sea, prevent human injury or loss of life and avoid damage to the marine environment.

All companies operating and/or owning ships must:

- Provide for safe practices in ship operations and a safe working environment.
- Establish safeguards against all identified risks.
- Continuously improve safety management skills of personnel ashore and on-board ships, including preparing for emergencies related to both safety and environmental protection.
- Comply with all mandatory rules and regulations.
- Ensure that applicable codes, guidelines and standards recommended by IMO, Flag states, Classification Societies and marine organisations are considered.

Therefore, in regard to DP Engineer training, the ship operator, whether owner or charterer, must ensure that the Engineers on DP vessels undertakes the required initial training, including shore courses, and also that the Engineer is familiar with the equipment installed on the ship, both for normal operations and emergency situations.

The NI does not provide DP training; rather it accredits the training institutions to provide training to for DP Vessel Maintainer. A list of accredited DP Engineer training providers can be found on the NI's website.

5. SCHEME OVERVIEW

What is a DP Vessel Maintainer?

1. A DP Maintainer is a person onboard a DP vessel that is part of the Technical team whose duties include safe DP operation and preventive maintenance of all DP related systems on board a DP vessel.
2. Has the knowledge of DP components and their location onboard the DP vessel to allow DP Maintainer to communicate with and complete repairs under the direct instruction from the equipment manufacturer.
3. Has the knowledge to stop maintenance before affecting the redundancy of the vessel
4. Has the Knowledge to know when a vessel is safe to conduct DP operations and is compliant with the DP class of the vessel.

Why the DPVM Training Scheme is Necessary?

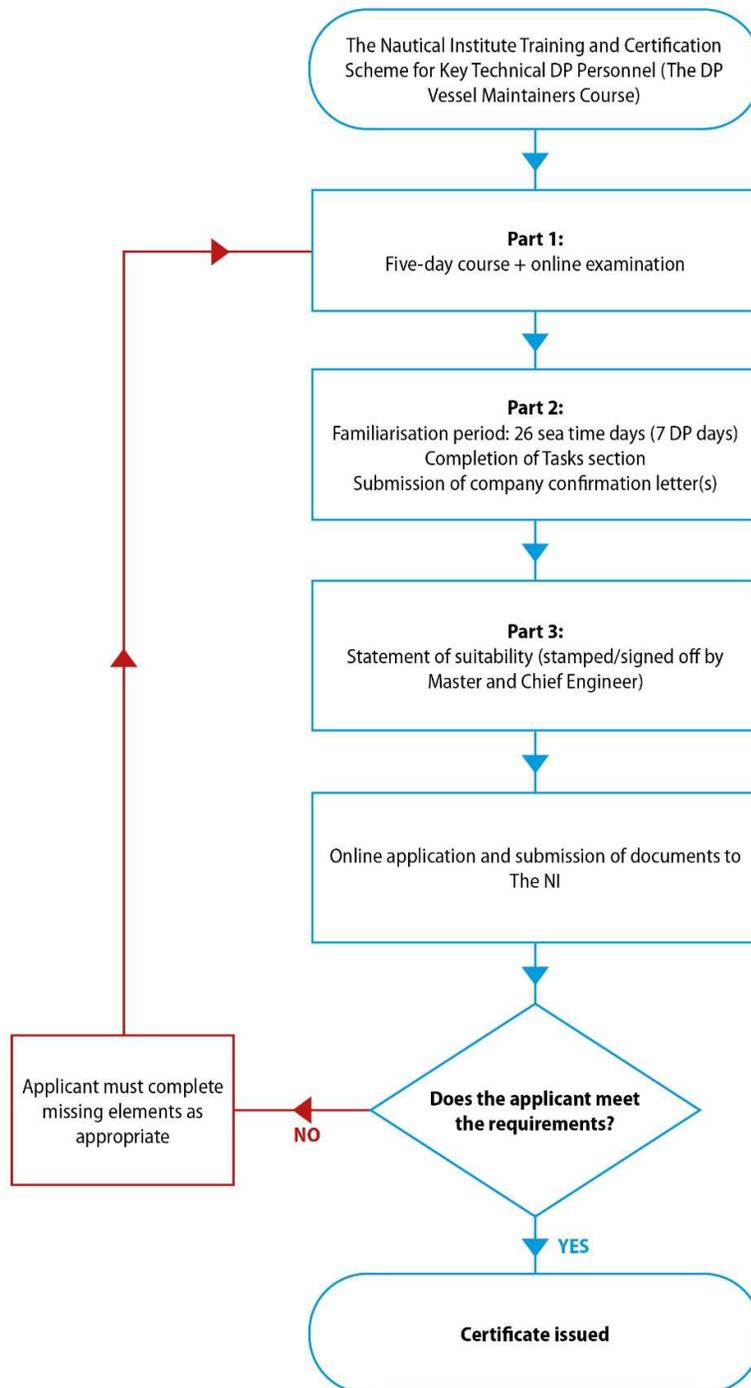
- To ensure DP Vessel Maintainer has the training to carry out items in "What is a DP Vessel Maintainer"
- Measure the training quality worldwide of all centres
- Ensure DP Maintainers are familiar with DP Theory, DP concepts and DP systems and all associated systems onboard their current vessel
- The Scheme ensures that training and experience meet a common minimum standard throughout the Dynamic Positioning industry to ensure safe operations.
- Understand all the redundancy aspect of onboard systems to ensure safe DP operations.

6. TRAINING SCHEME

DP vessel Maintainer should be knowledgeable of the type and purpose of documentation associated with DP operations, DP operations manual that is part of the operator safety management system. Charterer specific instructions, Equipment manuals, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEAs) and capability plots and other DP documents onboard as per IMCA M 109 - A Guide to DP-related documentation for DP vessels.

All training shall be given by properly qualified and suitably experienced personnel. Upon appointment to a vessel operating in DP mode, DP Vessel Maintainer should be familiarized with the specific equipment fitted on the vessel, consideration should be given to the nature of the work of the vessel and the importance of the DP system to this work.

The flowchart below illustrates the scheme progression for new entrants, from the start of the training to the issuing of a certificate.



7. SCHEME LAYOUT

Part 1: DP vessel Maintainer Course, Onshore

Part one is a shore-based course provided by an accredited training institute and cover content as listed in the Appendices.

Training school certificate name:

“Nautical Institute Key Technical DP Personnel Training – DP Vessel Maintainers’ Part One Theory”

The course is conducted over five days with a minimum of 34 hours which include theory instructions, practical exercises and practical exam and online exam.

This Annex also covers Instructor qualifications, extra simulator equipment required, course duration, practical assessment, and NI online exam.

Part 2: DP Sea Time onboard active DP vessel and Task section of Logbook

Total days: 26 sea time days Onboard DP Class Vessel
Minimum days on DP: 7 days (2 hours operation per day)
Task Sections.

Part 3: Statement of Suitability

Statement of Suitability (To be signed by both the Master and Chief Engineer).

8. MINIMUM ENTRY REQUIREMENTS

Minimum Requirements for entry into the DPVM Scheme shall be as follows:

Following the 2010 Manila amendments to the STCW Convention and Code, The Nautical Institute (the NI) has implemented the following criteria for entry into the DP Vessel Maintainer training scheme: The minimum qualification is set at STCW Regulation III/1 – III /2 – III/3 – III/6 Engine and Regulation III/6 for ETOs. The Nautical Institute will also accept anyone on a case by case basis that holds a technical officer’s position on any DP vessel. This does not include ratings.

The training centre theory part and NI online exam for the course may also be attended by relevant shore-based Technical staff and DPO and technical Cadets to improve their knowledge and they can be issued a certificate of completion (Theory Only).

To be issued a Key Technical DP Personnel Certificate (The DP Vessel Maintainer’ Course Certificate) you must be serving as part of the vessel Technical staff. i.e. Engineer or ETO.

9. REVALIDATION

A. The holder of a DPVM Certificate with 150 DP days or more sea time will need to:

- Successfully pass the NI Revalidation Course online exam and either:
 - i NI-approved continuing professional development (CPD) scheme
 - or*
 - ii NI DPVM Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.

B. DPVM with 30 days or more DP sea time may revalidate with the following option

- NI DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.
- C. DPVM with NO DP sea time or less than 30 days must complete the NI DPVM Revalidation Course. When revalidating using the Revalidation Course for a second or subsequent time, the DP technical staff must follow the rules as per the standard with respect to sea time requirements.

Table 1 Revalidation matrix

1 Jan 2024	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of one year of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2025	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of two years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2026	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of three years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2027	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of four years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2028	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of five years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2029	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of five years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Since from 1 st January 2029, the 12 months latitude to complete the CPD programme does not apply.

10. GRANDFATHER ENTRY

The Nautical Institute recognises that there are many professionally trained and competent engineer already on DP vessels that may wish to get a DPVM certificate. As a safe guard for the Industry the Nautical Institute will allow engineers that have completed 150 days onboard a DP vessel to bypass DP training and just undertake the Nautical Institute online exam at a NI training centre that is normally held at the end of the 5 days of training in a training school. The Officer will still need to complete the task section of the DP Logbook and 26 days seatime.

Any Officers that have completed “DP Technical Knowledge for Technical staff part A” will not have to repeat the Training centre course and online exam. They can apply for Logbook and complete the onboard training. The grandfather entry will expire on 30th June 2023.

11. ONLINE ASSESSMENT

In order to be awarded a certificate of completion for the DP Vessel Maintainer Course the trainee must pass an online assessment at the training centre. The exam is composed of multiple-choice questions and shall be

completed in 1 hour 30 minutes. The online assessment will consist of 40 questions and shall be completed with a pass mark of 70%.

Students who fail at the first attempt are allowed to have another two attempts within six months of the first attempt; however, the second attempt must be undertaken within 96 hours of the first attempt. Failing these three initial attempts, the student is required to repeat the DP Vessel Maintainer Course and undertake the assessment again.

On successful completion of the DP Vessel Maintainer Course and online assessment, the trainee Dynamic Positioning Vessel Maintainer will be issued with a Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme for Key Technical DP Personnel logbook in which his/her course, DP sea time, task completion and Statement of Suitability as a DPVM are recorded.

12. APPENDIX 1 TO TRAINING AND CERTIFICATION SCHEME FOR KEY TECHNICAL DP PERSONNEL (THE DP VESSEL MAINTAINER COURSE) - TRAINING, ACCREDITATION & REQUIREMENTS

Accreditation is given for the DP Maintainers Course.

Where the Nautical Institute Training centre has a “B” Class simulator and meets the requirement of “NI - Training centre model Course DP Vessel Maintainer” to support the delivery and assessment of the DP Maintainer course, may apply for accreditation to conduct the DP Maintainer Course.

The attention of master’s and Chief Engineers are drawn to this statement: the suitability of the officer to undertake full DP Vessel Maintainer duties keeping responsibility on board a DP vessel.

This is the final assessment of the trainee DP Vessel Maintainer and master’s and Chief Engineers should carefully consider whether they are able to affirm the statements within this section before signing. The Statement of Suitability should be completed at the end of final period of sea time prior to a certificate application being made.

Time to Complete the Training Scheme

In order to avoid deterioration of skills during the training period, all elements of the DP training scheme shall be completed within two years. The two year rule applies for those who enter the schemes from 2021.

When applying and submitting documents to The Nautical Institute (the NI), ALL components of the programme (shore-based courses, DP sea time, task sections, Statement of Suitability form and other elements) must have been completed within the previous two years. In the event any of training phases fall outside of the two-year validity period, the trainee will be required to repeat the expired training phase.

Discharge Book, Certificate of Discharge and Company Confirmation Letter

Trainee DP Vessel Maintainer are required to provide a confirmation or testimonial letter from the shipping companies for all the DP sea time required for the DP Vessel Maintainer. This letter shall follow the conditions below:

- Be written on original headed paper from the shipping company.
- Be signed and stamped by the Operations Manager or Engineer Superintendent or equivalent. Letters signed by Masters or agency staff are not acceptable.
- Be written and dated only after the DP Vessel Maintainer has completed the DP sea time claimed.
- Confirm the total time the applicant has performed as a trainee DP Vessel Maintainer on board the vessel(s). The NI reserves the right to ask for further and more detailed information, such as the engine room log, if applicable.

After completing the online application, the applicant shall send the following documents to the NI:

- Copy of the STCW CoC, Letter of Service from Company or NVQ certificate (page with personal details, validity date and CoC number);
- Original DP Vessel Maintainer logbook
- Copy of passport personal details page
- Original Company confirmation letter/s confirming all DP sea time;

- Signed and dated PDF checklist available on the candidate’s account after payment. It is compulsory for the trainee DP Vessel Maintainer to sign the declaration of data contained in the online application
- Any other supporting documentation.

The NI reserves the right to return the logbook and application to candidates who do not apply online or if anything is found to be incorrect or incomplete in the application or training.

Companies which verify their candidates to ensure requirements have been met before an application is made to the NI tend to be more successful. This also assists the company in the management of their DP personnel and their training and progression.

The Process for Accreditation by The Nautical Institute

Usually, only centres approved by The Nautical Institute for DPO training will be accredited for this scheme.

However, the NI can also consider the approval for DPVM accreditation on a case by case basis.

Guidance on the procedures for accreditation is contained in “The Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol 2 (Accreditations).

13. APPENDIX 2 TO TRAINING AND CERTIFICATION SCHEME FOR KEY TECHNICAL DP PERSONNEL (THE DP VESSEL MAINTAINER COURSE) – MODEL COURSE

This document covers the Training Centre section of the Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme for Technical DP Personnel (DP Vessel Maintainers' Certificate course) and is to be read in conjunction with the Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.2 – (Accreditation) 2021.

The Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.2 – (Accreditation) 2021 includes detail requirement for the accreditation of the Training Centres. Administration, classroom layout, training equipment, student's safety, and Simulators.

This document includes extra requirement for Instructor and Simulator equipment that is specific the DPVM Classroom base Training.

Introduction

This NI model course document is to be read in conjunction with:

- A. The Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme For Key Technical DP Personnel. (The DP Vessel Maintainer' Course). Name as DPVM in this document.
- B. Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.2 – (Accreditation) 2021

Purpose of the NI model courses for DP Vessel Maintainer

The purpose of the NI model courses is to assist NI Training institutes and their teaching staff in organizing and introducing new training courses, or in enhancing, updating or supplementing existing training material where the quality and effectiveness of the training courses may thereby be improved.

As in all training endeavors, the knowledge, skills, competence, and dedication of Instructors are the key components in the transfer of knowledge and skills to those being trained through NI standards.

Course shall be a minimum duration of five days with a minimum of 34 hours including classroom instruction, simulator time and assessments.

This Course is Part One of The Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme for Key Technical DP Personnel (The DP Vessel Maintainer' Course) which comprises the following:

Part One: Nautical Institute Key Technical DP Personnel Training – DP Vessel Maintainers' Part One Theory Course is a shore-based course provided by a Nautical Institute accredited training institute and cover course contents in this document.

The course is conducted over five days with a minimum of 34 hours which include theory instruction, practical exercises and practical exam and online exam. This course covers full details course contents, Instructor qualifications, extra simulator equipment required, course duration and practical exam and online exam.

Part Two: DP Sea Time onboard active DP vessel and completing Task section of Logbook Total days: 26 days Onboard DP Class Vessel.

Minimum days on DP: 7 days (2 hours operation per day)

Vessel specific and company specific training as listed in the DPVM logbook Task Sections

Part Three: Statement of Suitability

Statement of Suitability (To be signed by both the Master and Chief Engineer)

The NI DPVM Logbook covers the onboard training and drills required by the DP Vessel Maintainer. DP Vessel Maintainer requires good understanding of on-board Familiarisation with the DP equipment, DP integration of other systems onboard, DP Procedures, DP documents and their locations Effective training in the classroom and onboard should enable key DP technical personnel to respond quickly and appropriately to equipment failures

and faults that may result in DP incidents, to identify when the vessel has a loss of redundancy and is required to be moved to safe “drift Off” location before reinstating DP equipment to normal operating state.

Training centre’s or Organisations which have developed a training program that is compliant with NI DPVM course requirements may apply for Accreditation by The Nautical Institute (the NI) for the course. When the organisation and course is accredited it will be authorised to issue certificates bearing the logo of the NI and to promote their course as being compliant with the standard of the NI.

Use of the NI DPVM model course

To use the model course effectively, Instructors should review the course plan and detailed syllabus, considering the information on the entry standards specified in the course framework. The actual level of knowledge and skills and prior technical education of the trainees should be kept in mind during this review, and any areas within the detailed syllabus which may cause difficulties because of differences between the actual trainee entry level and that assumed by the course designer should be identified. To compensate for such differences, all course material shall be sent to NI for review.

Lesson plans

Training centres are to develop lesson plans based on the detailed teaching syllabus and specifications of simulators. Instructors should pay due attention to the trainee's background and previous knowledge when adjusting the course content to suit the trainee’s intake and advise of any revision of the course objectives required. The detailed teaching syllabus describes required performances, which, together with the exercise scenarios, will be used to deliver the course.

Presentation

The presentation of concepts and methodologies should be repeated in various ways until instructors are satisfied that the trainee has attained each specific learning objective. The syllabus is laid out in learning-objective format and each objective specifies the performance required of the trainees to achieve objective of the learning outcomes.

Implementation

For the course to run smoothly and to be effective, considerable attention should be paid to the availability and use of:

- Properly qualified instructors.
- Technical and non-technical support staff.
- Teaching and other spaces.
- Appropriate training equipment and teaching aids.
- Videos and multi-media presentations.
- Textbooks, appropriate technical papers, etc.
- Minimum Class B simulator approved by The Nautical Institute
- Extra simulator requirement for DP Vessel Maintainer practical training
- Nautical Institute knowledge base database of training materials

Validation

The guidance contained in this document has been validated by the NI DPTEG on Human Element, Training and Watchkeeping for use by Administrations and training providers in developing relevant training program for the effective implementation of uniform minimum standards for training and certification of seafarers.

Part A: Course Framework

Aim

To give the student the following:

- Understanding of the theoretical and practical operation of DP systems.
- Technical understanding of the component parts of the DP and associated systems.
- An understanding of the limitations of equipment and the effects of equipment failures.
- An understanding of the limitations and the effects of incorrect operation of the systems.
- An understanding of work which can safely be undertaken with and without the help of equipment manufacturers, and more importantly, when to stop before affecting the vessels capability to perform DP operations or redundancy.
- The ability to fault find the DP system and its base components.
- An understanding of FMEAs and the philosophy of system redundancy.
- An improved ability to operate the Engine Room and DP equipment in a safe and competent manner.
- An understanding of MTS vessel design philosophy and MTS fundamentals.
- An understanding of cross connections and effect on redundancy.
- This course covers DP knowledge and vessel / Type Specific onboard equipment training.

Scope

Seafarers responsible for designated dynamic positioning duties associated with the care, use or in emergency response should have completed the NI Training for Key Technical Personnel (DP Vessel Maintainers' course for service on ships subject to Dynamic Positioning operations.

This course is essentially a course with practical guidance and information and provides training and qualifications for engineers, engine officers, ETOs on ships subject to the technical team.

The course consists theory and practical exercises structured around the safe operation of DP Ships, DP classes, design of DP installations, propulsion machinery, auxiliary system, power generation machinery.

Training and Accreditation Standard

Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.2 – (Accreditation) current version

The Process for Accreditation by The Nautical Institute

Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.2 – (Accreditation) current version

Entry standards

Refer to DP Vessel Maintainer Training and Certificate scheme, Accreditation standard.

Course intake limitations

Refer to DP vessel Maintainer Training and Certificate scheme, Accreditation standard.

Staff requirements & Instructor Qualifications

Course shall be conducted by an NI DP instructor who has also attended the NI DPVM course or NI DP Knowledge for Technical staff Part A.

The course may be delivered by one or two instructors.

The course shall have a suitably qualified ETO, Chief Engineer or DP Service Engineer support training. If the NI Instructor is an Engineer or has good in-depth technical knowledge, then extra support may not be required subject to review by the NI.

Teaching facilities and equipment

Suitable teaching spaces equipped with the relevant facilities should be provided to facilitate the effective delivery of training, which could be through lectures, group exercises and discussions, as appropriate. Where the use of multi-media and simulation is intended, it should be ensured that the appropriate multi-media equipment and simulators are made available.

The following items of equipment are recommended:

- Audio-visual equipment and material
- Whiteboard/interactive whiteboard/flipchart for demonstrations
- Internet connection
- Minimum DP class B Simulator recognized by The Nautical Institute
- Extra simulator equipment as listed below
- Requirements of Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.2 – (Accreditation) current version.

To enable the trainees to undergo practical exercises on DP Simulator that covers section B-V/f* from STCW Code and the Objective of this document.

Delivery Method

The course will be theory and NI “B” class simulator based and will give the participant an overview of DP operation and the effects of system and component failures. On completion of this course participants will understand the general arrangements for DP systems and the principles of operation of the equipment. Participants will gain an understanding of the importance of the interaction between the system components and the modes of operation.

The course is set up to allow developing some of the course contents into computer-based training. The student-to-instructor ratio will be a maximum of eight students to one instructor to ensure proper learning.

However, a case may be made for up to 12 students depending on the equipment available and extra support staff.

This course requires the ability to read and interpret ships drawings, typical product specifications, job sheets, procedures, material labels and safety information as provided to operators. Writing is required to the level of completing workplace forms. The course shall be delivered in English.

Teaching aids (A)

- A1 Instructor manual
- A2 Visual presentations
- A3 Videos
- A4 Drawings
- A5 Samples of sensors

DP Vessel Drawings or other means of demonstration of ship installations of systems for propulsion machinery and auxiliary power generation machinery.

Note

1. Other equivalent teaching aids, including multi-media training aids such as videos, CD- ROMs, e-learning materials and computer-based training (CBT), etc. may be used only if approved by Nautical Institute before being used for training.
2. NI will provide technical support documentation to training school via NI website Training Provider logon
Training FMEA, vessel drawing, product information
IMCA document approve for use by Training centre
MTS documents approved for use by Training centre

Use of Simulators

If using simulator-based training, instructors should ensure that the aims and objective of these sessions are defined within the overall training program and that tasks are selected to relate as closely as possible to shipboard tasks and practices.

Simulator Equipment Required

Simulator equipment required to run the classroom course:

The minimum simulator requirement is an NI Class B simulator in an accredited NI Training Centre. Course contents shall have an assortment of photos of real equipment and DP installations. Photos must cover all parts of DP System: (i) Controller (ii) I/O units (iii) Optical isolators (iv) Switchboard (V) Environmental sensors (VI) Position Reference Systems

Computer to display different types of serial strings. This may be augmented if a real sensor is available
Students should preferably be supplemented with a real hardware and associated equipment operational or non-operational.

If a Training centre does not have some of the simulator equipment or screen to show I/O information etc on their simulator then on a case-by-case basis the auditor will ensure the training notes covers the required course objectives.

Simulator exercises

- 7.1. Demonstrate a problem of command signal
- 7.2. Demonstrate a problem with the feedback signal
- 7.3. Demonstrate a thruster failing to full thrust
- 7.4. Demonstrate a reject problem with Gyro and wind sensor
- 7.5. Demonstrate a slow spread of position reference system, then deselect one position reference system to show how a vessel can have a drive off with all equipment working correctly
- 7.6. Demonstrate a slow spread of position reference sensors until one position reference system is rejected by median test / Prediction test
- 7.7. Demonstrate the high loads caused if the set point speed is set too high.
- 7.8. Demonstrate the high load caused when changing heading when centre of rotation is set away from the centre of the vessel
- 7.9. Demonstrate having the bow into high wind and current, then turn the vessel 90 degrees and show high load and loss of position
- 7.10. Demonstrate if the DP is unstable
- 7.11. Monitor the Command and feedback value in mA on the DP Operator Screen.
- 7.12. Monitor input serial strings into the DP system on Operator screen if the string is simulated' or use computer program to generate serial string.

Safety routines

Safety precautions during DP drills are important during this course and affect the course structure. Trainees should always be protected from danger whilst the course is in progress. Training providers should consider the training spaces, equipment, facilities available and the safety of trainees at all times. During the course, especially during practical drills, trainees should strictly adhere to the safety rules laid down by the training provider.

All the equipment used for practical training should be properly maintained and approved by the Nautical Institute.

Part B: General Outline

General Course Content and Competencies

The general course content and competencies comprises of the following outline:

- General Overview of DP
- The Power System
- The Thruster System
- Control Systems and Sensors
- Documentation
- DP Operation and effects on DP system
- Safe DP operation CAM, ASOG, TAM and TAGOS
- Lessons Learned
- Manning, Training, and competency assessment

Timetable

Course shall be a minimum duration of five days with a minimum of 34 hours instruction, simulator time and assessments. This NI course has been developed providing a recommended range in duration of 34 hours over 5 days for lectures, demonstrations, or simulator exercises and NI online assessment and practical assessment. The Training centre is to develop a formal timetable for this model course.

Training centres must develop their own timetable depending on:

- The level of skills of trainees.
- The numbers to be trained.
- The number of instructors; and
- Simulator facilities and equipment
- Normal practices at the training Centre.

Course Outline

Review of Nautical Institute DPVM Training Scheme.

- DP Hardware and integration with other ships systems
- DP Software, alarms and position control.
- Power system and Thruster systems
- Planned maintenance of DP and associated system and when to call service technician.
- Documentation, DP equipment, Class, IMCA and MTS
- Manning, Training, and competency assessment
- Safe DP Operations

Essential Non-DP Systems – safety systems
Future Trends including automation and Integrated Bridge Management Systems
Simulator Exercises

The course comprises lectures, demonstrations, and simulation exercises. The outline below identifies the main areas of the course.

Learning objective format is used in the detailed teaching syllabus given in Part C; the outline below is a summary of the course material. The numbering system used below reflects that of the detailed teaching syllabus.

Part C: Detailed Outline

Part C correlates the knowledge, understanding and proficiencies defined in the STCW Code and IMCA 117, with the specific learning outcomes that the trainees should achieve. Each specific outcome is presented as a topic or sub-topic as a Learning Objective reflecting the knowledge, understanding and proficiency in section B-V/f* from STCW Code.

Learning objectives

The following detailed course outline has been developed in learning objectives.

1	Course contents and Competencies in Detail to be part of NI - Training centre model Course DP vessel Maintainer
1.1	The following list of competencies are in detail to ensure that all training centre cover the same contents, many of the items are just one statement on a PowerPoint. The numbering is based on the current number for DP Knowledge for Technical staff. The Nautical Institute will supply Training centres with an FMEA study and FMEA proving trial, IMCA, MTS and OCIMF documents to base some of their training on.
2	Brief history of DP system development
2.1	Development of DP Systems and what is needed for offshore drilling
2.2	Brief discussion on the way DP is used
3	Reasons why DP is used extensively; Client requirements; Safety etc.
3.1	DP can be used when water is too deep for Anchors
3.2	Removes the need to make fast to offshore installation and improves the safety for crews
3.3	Quick deployment at a new location of any type of vessel
3.4	Increasingly difficult to manually operate multi-thruster vessels
3.5	Provides a stable platform for crane ops, gangway ops, ROV ops etc.
4	Types of DP Vessels
4.1	Course to briefly discuss the type of DP vessels and their use. OSV, drilling units, construction vessels, dive vessels, pipe lay vessels, wind farm vessel, passenger vessels. Describe type of thrusters fitted
5	Theory of DP control; Explanation of how the system positions the vessel; Heading; Feedback; Wind; Modelling, Kalman filter, controllers and DP current etc.
5.1	To be able to discuss briefly the main elements of a DP System, DP Computer/Controller, Thruster and propulsion, Power systems, position reference and environmental sensors
5.2	Describe why the DP system requires a wind input
5.3	Describe why the DP system requires a heading input
5.4	Describe why the DP system requires an input for roll, pitch and possibly heave
5.5	Describe full Joystick mode
5.6	Describe joystick auto heading mode
5.7	Describe 2 axis control
5.8	Describe full 3 axis control
5.9	Describe the difference between DP Joystick and remote joystick and independent Joystick
5.1	Describe modelling
5.11	Describe the function of Kalman filters
5.12	Describe how DP current is calculated
6	DP equipment classes as defined in IMO guidelines and Classification Society rules.
6.1	Describe Class 1, Class 2 and Class 3 DP vessels
6.2	Describe enhanced notation.
6.3	Review DP system generic one line drawing for Class 1, 2 and 3 vessels
6.4	Describe redundancy
6.5	Describe Worst Case Failure (WCF) in terms of redundancy
6.6	Describe Loss of redundancy effecting class of the vessel

6.7	Describe the overuse of power and the effect on WCF redundancy
6.8	Describe what class of vessel is best suited for each industry mission
6.9	Describe consequence analysis alarm and requirement for the use during class 2 and 3 operation
6.10	Describe what would trigger a consequence analysis alarm
7	Typical elements of a generic DP system
7.1	Describe the function of Controllers
7.2	Describe the function Serial input
7.3	Describe the function Analog and digital input and output
7.4	Describe the function Network system
7.5	Describe the function power Supplies
8	The Power System
8.1	All components and systems necessary to supply the DP system with power. The power system includes:
9	Fuel systems
9.1	Describe a generic redundancy fuel system
9.2	Describe potential failures and associated impact on DP Class
9.3	Describe how contaminated fuel can affect redundancy
9.4	Describe how the cross connection of a fuel system will defeat redundancy
9.5	Describe the effects of inadvertent operation of fuel tank Quick Closing Valves.
10	Cooling systems, Fresh and Sea Water
10.1	Describe a generic redundant cooling system for fresh and sea water
10.2	Describe the impact of system failures on DP Class
10.3	Describe cooling pipework separation required for class 3 redundancy
10.4	Describe the requirement to keep plate coolers, sea strainers clean and the effects of overheating. Overheating will be leading to a reduction of power available and effect on redundancy.
10.5	Describe the use of two sea suction valves in a system
10.6	Describe the effect of weed and jelly fish blocking sea suction
10.7	Describe the effect of ballast pump if connected to the same sea water system suction as the cooling system.
10.8	Describe the use of antifouling system requirements in sea water systems.
10.9	
11	Compressed Air System
11.1	Describe the layout of a typical redundant compressed air system
11.2	Describe the possible effects of compressed air failure on DP operations
11.3	Describe precaution with sharing ships compressed air with on deck Industry mission equipment
12	Ventilation system
12.1	Describe layout of a redundant engine room ventilation system
12.2	Describe the possible effects of inadvertent closure of ventilation dampers during DP operation
11.3	Describe possible effects of gas detection and fire detection equipment could have on ventilation systems.
13	HVAC
13.1	Describe layout of HVAC systems for redundant equipment operation
13.2	Describe the effect of loss of HVAC to Engine rooms, Equipment rooms, switchboard rooms, control rooms and bridge could have on the DP system
14	Lubrication system
14.1	Describe a typical layout of a redundant lubrication system for an engine

14.2	Describe a typical layout of a redundant lubrication system for propulsion system
14.3	Describe the important of a pre lubrication system on a standby generator engine to allow quick start up.
14.4	Describe the consequence of loss of lubrication system for thrusters, CPPs and gearboxes
14.5	Describe the importance of oil sampling and testing as part of the maintenance routines
14.6	Generators and main engines
14.7	Main engines
14.8	Describe typical generation plant layout redundant power generation arrangements. Both full diesel-electric and direct drive main thrusters
15	Main switchboard
15.1	Discuss the generated voltage options and limitations with regard to main switchboard short circuit design.
15.2	Describe a typical layout and functionality of a redundant switchboard for a diesel electric power plant
15.3	Describe interlocks on main switchboards
15.4	Describe potential failures and the impact on DP Class
15.5	Describe switchboard protection systems
15.6	Describe the term “designed to test”
15.7	Describe problem with main switchboard, under and over voltage, under and over cycles, short circuits.
15.8	Discuss the precautions to be taken before re-closing a bus tie or main breaker after a trip
15.9	Describe why you would have thermal imaging conducted on switchboards on DP vessels
15.10	Describe the function of automatic change-over systems
15.11	Discuss the problems with connecting mission equipment to a redundant main switchboard.
15.12	Discuss DC main switchboard concepts
15.13	Discuss monitoring equipment on main switchboard
15.14	Discuss Energy Storage system. Connections with switchboards. Max power usage, Battery safety
16	Generators
16.1	Describe typical arrangements on a DP2 vessel
16.2	Describe spinning reserve and power available
16.3	Discuss the arrangements required to ensure redundancy remains in place and what factors influence redundancy
16.4	Describe the use of standby generators and at what load should generator auto start
16.5	Describe spinning reserve and power available
16.6	Describe the reason to disable auto stop on low load when on DP
16.7	Describe how the use of more than 45% utilization can affect redundancy
16.8	Describe how the electrical power available will affect thruster output
16.9	Describe how the electrical power available will affect the vessel capability plot
16.10	Describe load shedding
16.11	Be able to discuss a one-line electrical drawing
16.12	Describe how generator monitoring systems are different to power management systems
16.13	Describe AVR control base principal and result of AVR failure
16.14	Describe the typical plant layout for a diesel electric DP vessel, compare the layout to aconventional vessel with twin CPP propellers. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of both systems.
16.15	Describe engine shutdown and protection systems.

17	Bus-tie requirements of IMO/class/ FMEA
17.1	Describe open and closed bus tie as per IMO 645 / IMO 1580
17.2	Discuss the precautions to be taken before re-closing a bus tie or main breaker after a trip
17.3	Describe how open bus tie can ensure a fault on one switchboard will not affect another switchboard
17.4	Describe with an example how the main bus-tie breaker and all other breaker are setup as per FMEA
17.5	Describe benefit of closed bus tie systems
17.6	Describe that after WCF on a closed bus tie system the bus tie is to remain open if trip during WCF until fault is found.
17.7	Describe breaker selective study, fault ride through and that the main bus tie is to open before the generator breakers.
17.8	Discuss new requirements for testing of bus tie breakers
18	Electrical systems and cabling communications
18.1	UPS
18.2	Describe a typical UPS arrangement for DP2 and DP3 operations
18.3	Describe the function of an Uninterrupted Power Supply
18.4	Describe how to operate the bypass of a UPS
18.5	Describe test requirements for a UPS
18.6	Describe typical alarms from a UPS
18.7	Describe maintenance and life of UPS batteries
19	AC supplies
19.1	Identify on a one line drawing the redundancy setup and ensure there is no cross connections
19.2	Identify what is connected to the AC circuits and possible loads
19.3	Describe a typical one line diagram for distribution and supply of AC circuits on a DP vessel
19.4	Identify what is connected to the AC circuits and which are critical to DP operations.
19.5	Describe all sub tie breakers need to stay open regardless if the main tie breaker is open or closed
19.6	Discuss circuit protection and fuses
19.7	Discuss testing of auto standby circuits for pumps, steering etc.
20	DC supplies
20.1	Describe a typical 24v DC Redundant supply one line diagram
20.2	Describe the various arrangements for backup supplies to engine control systems and switchboards
20.3	Describe the risk of cross connections 24v supplies
20.4	Describe the problem of earth faults on two redundant systems and the use of DC/DC isolated supplies
20.5	Discuss the importance of clearing DC earth faults promptly for safe operation
20.6	Describe procedures for testing and maintenance of battery backup systems
20.7	Describe what could happen if there is a loss of charging power
20.8	Describe typical alarms from 24v DC systems
21	Digital interface
21.1	Describe a typical digital interface arrangement to a DP controller
21.2	Describe why a digital input is required by a DP controller and what system inputs normally use this type of input
21.3	Describe how a digital signal may be transmitted over a network from a remote I/O station
21.4	Discuss fail safe modes for digital signals and networks
21.5	Describe the loss of redundancy upon failure of one multi-channel interface unit (I/O) with input connected signal from two different redundancy groups

21.6	Discuss testing of digital signals
22	Analogue interface
22.1	Describe the different analogue signals associated with DP control systems and their use
22.2	Describe the benefit of 4 to 20 mA signals for control and feedback of thrusters and main drives
22.3	Discuss testing of analogue signals
23	Serial interface
23.1	Describe the concept of serial data transmission and its use in DP control systems
23.2	Describe the various types of serial connections, RS232 & RS422
23.3	Describe the different types of NMEA protocol sentence formats and how to read them
23.4	Describe how to monitor NMEA string using the DP display, laptop OR meter
23.5	Describe a simple check for NMEA string data errors
23.6	Describe the benefit of using RS422 serial connections over RS232
23.7	Discuss serial isolators and serial signal convertors
23.8	Discuss cable requirements for interconnection of serial units
23.9	Discuss / show examples on different NMEA strings (i.e. GNSS, wind, gyro etc.)
23.10	Describe the purpose and use of optical isolator units
24	Network Systems
24.1	Network layout for DP system
24.2	Network storm
24.3	Network testing
25	Power management system custom systems and IMO DP equipment class 2/3 requirements
25.1	Maintaining continuity of electrical power under all defined load and failure conditions
25.2	General system functions
25.3	Describe typical power management systems for a DP vessel
25.4	Describe why a breaker selective study is required and the importance.
25.5	Describe the difference between DP power limiting and Generator power management
25.6	Describe the reason to disable load dependent stop while in DP mode
25.7	Describe a generator monitoring system and the important information supplied.
26	Extra loads on switchboard with different operation, drilling, ROV etc
26.1	Describe the need for a new load balance study when connect extra equipment. i.e. ROV
26.2	Describe the possible reduced power to thrusters
26.3	Describe the possible effect on the vessels Capability plot
26.4	Describe the problem of only supply from one switchboard and the loss of the switchboard
26.5	Describe the possible of transferring fault and completes after failure of a piece of industrial equipment
26.6	Describe what a load balance study is
26.7	Describe what the term “designed to test” means
26.8	Describe auto blackout recovery
26.9	Describe load dependent start and the fact that the vessel could be passed the WCF load before extra generator start.
26.10	Discuss why there may be different parameters in the PMS for DP operation and Sea Mode.
26.11	Discuss system failures that can affect the operation of the PMS and backup operating modes that are available.
26.12	Discuss advanced generator supervisory systems and their independent operation from the PMS.
26.13	Extra redundancy required for working “drift on”.
26.14	Describe allow more spinning reserve when working drift on.

27	Cabling
27.1	Describe the need to keep cables away from heat, exhaust flow
27.2	Describe the physical cable routing for Class 3 vessels as per IMO 645 / 1580 and Classification Society requirements.
27.3	Describe the importance of separation between power cables and control and data cables.
27.4	Discuss use of separate cable trays and physical routing to maintain redundancy.
27.5	Describe the use and grounding arrangements for screened signal cables.
27.6	Describe the problem of replacing cables with the wrong type, not twist pairs
27.7	Describe the problem of network cable near radio transmitters
27.8	Discuss the use of fiber optic cable and its advantages over conventional types
28	The thruster system
28.1	All components and systems necessary to supply the DP system with thrust force and direction. The thruster system includes:
28.2	Azimuth thrusters, Tunnel thrusters, Propellers and other systems
29	Thruster control concepts
29.1	Describe how a DP system typically is connected to a thruster control system, including normal control and back-up control (on thruster control system).
29.2	How will emergency operation of thrusters affect the DP control of the thrusters?
30	Thruster redundancy
30.1	Thruster supply change over
30.2	Describe how changing over a thruster that has failed could transfer the fault to a second redundancy group
31	Thruster failure modes
31.1	Describe "Fail as set"
31.2	Describe "Fail to zero"
31.3	Describe "Fail to full"
31.4	Describe why you would lose the ready signal.
31.5	Describe that emergency stops will still work when vessel is in DP control
31.6	Effect on the DP system of a failed thruster
31.7	Describe the counterbalance effect of other thrusters when a thruster fails and the vessel is left in full auto DP mode
31.8	describe thruster control by IP over Ethernet controlled and trouble shooting
32	Azimuth thrusters, tunnel thrusters, propellers and other systems
32.1	Describe standard fixed pitch propeller advantages and disadvantages.
32.2	Describe standard CPP advantages and disadvantages.
32.3	Describe tunnel thruster advantages and disadvantages.
32.4	Describe Drop down and fixed in position azimuth thruster.
32.5	Describe Fixed pitch thrusters' advantages and disadvantages.
32.6	Describe CPP Az thruster advantages and disadvantages.
32.7	Describe flap / Becker rudders and advantages and disadvantages.
32.8	Describe fishtail rudders and their advantages and disadvantages.
32.9	Describe propeller nozzles advantages and disadvantages
32.10	Describe Variable frequency drives and advantages and disadvantages.
32.11	Describe Direct drive and advantages and disadvantages.
32.12	Describe constant speed RPM motors for CPP thrusters and advantages and disadvantages.
33	Thruster control concepts
33.1	All components and systems necessary to supply the DP system with thrust force and direction. The thruster system includes:

33.2	Describe the thruster ready signal and what parameters are required for it to be present.
33.3	Describe auto start-up of thrusters and auto selection into the DP system if a full blackout auto recovery system fitted. Recovery system is programmed into the power management system.
33.4	Describe command and feedback signals (mA and V) and which one is better,
33.5	Describe emergency stop on thruster.
33.6	Describe wire break monitoring.
33.7	Describe remote I/O concepts used in thruster control network or can bus systems.
33.8	Describe backup redundancy on control systems.
33.9	Describe typical alarms on thruster controls and DP systems.
33.10	Describe testing of thruster signals for DP trials.
34	Thruster redundancy
34.1	Describe typical thruster main power supply systems for redundancy
34.2	Describe typical backup hydraulic pumps, steering motors, cooling pumps, filters, cooling systems and fans fitted to rudder and thruster systems.
35	Thruster failure modes
35.1	Describe what would indicate the following on a DP system – Fail as set, fail to zero, fail to full, loss of ready signal.
35.2	Describe at hydraulic problem with CPP thrusters.
35.3	Describe a thruster could always have a mechanical problem.
36	Control systems and sensors
36.1	All control components and systems, hardware and software necessary to dynamically position the vessel. The DP control system consists of the following:
37	DP operator workstation
37.1	Describe a typical operator workstation and the various hardware components.
37.2	Describe the management for change for software
37.3	Describe the DP system must be full tested to check operation after software upgrade
37.4	Describe typical maintenance and testing that should be carried out on workstation
37.5	Describe a typical procedure for total shut down and re-starting of a DP control system
37.6	Discuss ability to download log files for analysis
38	Control processor(s)
38.1	Describe the function of the control processor in the DP control system
38.2	Describe the redundant design incorporated into the control system
38.3	Describe the redundant interconnections between the control processor and the I/O units
38.4	Describe how a failure on a DP controller is typically handled to maintain position-keeping
38.5	Describe how some DP systems use a PLC as part of the control system
39	Independent joystick system (IJS)
39.1	Describe why IJS is needed
39.2	Describe the difference between IJS and portable / wing joysticks
39.3	Describe the class requirement for IJS
39.4	Describe that some older vessel the IJS can use the same controllers
39.5	Describe how a IJS is powered
39.6	Describe which DP sensors and references are also typically used for the IJS
40	Peripherals
41	Printer
41.1	Describe the DP printer and requirements for it to be online during DP operations
41.2	Discuss DP data loggers as independent to the DP system, can replace as long as you can print alarms.

41.3	Discuss ability to download log files for analysis
42	Changeover switch, manual controls/DP/joystick
42.1	Describe the design of a typical changeover switch as a multi-gang switch on a single operating spindle and are not electrical connected
42.2	Describe that a common changeover switch removes the ready signal from the thruster to DP system
42.3	Describe the changeover switch in a Network thruster control system
42.4	Describe emergency to manual on a network control system
42.5	Describe wire break monitoring on emergency change over DP to manual and on a DP to Manual network control system.
42.6	Describe that the emergency stop and backup/emergency controls will still work with changeover switch set to manual or DP mode or IJS Mode
43	DP software
43.1	Describe the six degrees of freedom and which of these the DP system controls
43.2	Describe hydrodynamic model
43.3	Describe aeronautical model
43.4	Describe DP mathematical model and PID control loop
43.5	Describe DP current
43.6	Describe error affecting the DP current
43.7	Describe reason for the mathematical model to become unstable
43.8	Describe auto swap on the operator station and controllers. And class rules about swapping
43.9	Describe DP modes
43.10	Describe backup copy and reloading program under instructions for manufactures.
44	Alarms
44.1	Describe the need to set alarms to activate to warn at any early stage
44.2	Describe that the DPO and engineer must understand what the alarm is and what caused the alarm
44.3	Describe how to find information about an alarm in vessels documents and on-screen help
45	Position reference systems: hardware, software and sensors
45.1	Describe why position reference systems are used by the DP program
45.2	Describe the minimum number of position reference systems required to meet class 1, 2 and 3
45.3	Describe position reference system voting
45.4	Describe the difference between “fixed” and “mobile” relative position reference systems
45.5	Describe what happens when all position reference systems are lost from the DP system
46	DGPS/DGNSS
46.1	Describe principle of GNSS systems
46.2	Describe DGNSS and the use of correction to improve the quality of position fix
46.3	Describe the different way DGNSS corrections are received
46.4	Describe the disadvantages of DGNSS system
46.5	Describe the advantages of DGNSS system
46.6	Describe the use of INS to improve the reliability of position
46.7	Describe how to identify an antenna problem
46.8	Describe the blocking of correction signal
46.9	Describe the Azimuth and elevation of a corrections satellite
46.10	Describe failure modes
46.11	Describe maintenance and logical fault finding
46.12	Describe Jamming and spoofing of DGNSS system
47	Acoustic

47.1	Describe principle of an acoustic system.
47.2	Describe why the speed of sound through the water is required
47.3	Describe advantages
47.4	Describe disadvantages
47.5	Describe failure modes
47.6	Describe maintenance and logical fault finding
47.7	Discuss transponder types and use, charging of transponders
48	Taut wire
48.1	Describe principle of a Taut wire system
48.2	Describe advantages
48.3	Describe disadvantages
48.4	Describe failure modes
48.5	Describe maintenance and logical fault finding
49	Laser - system
49.1	Describe principle of a CyScan system
49.2	Describe advantages
49.3	Describe disadvantages
49.4	Describe failure modes
49.5	Describe maintenance and logical fault finding
49.6	Describe the different types of laser targets, use and maintenance
49.7	Describe CyScan AS targets
49.8	Describe SceneScan targetless laser system
50	Microwave – systems, short- and long-range
50.1	Describe principle of a RadaScan, Radius, Artemis system
50.2	Describe the positioning of Interrogator units
50.3	Describe advantages
50.4	Describe disadvantages
50.5	Describe failure modes
50.6	Describe maintenance and logical fault finding
50.7	Describe transponders and battery maintenance requirements
51	Inertial navigation systems
51.1	Describe principle of the inertial navigation system (INS)
51.2	Describe advantages
51.3	Describe disadvantages
51.4	Describe how INS is used with DGNSS and hydro acoustic systems.
51.5	Describe failure modes
51.6	Describe maintenance and logical fault finding
52	DP sensor systems
53	Gyro
53.1	Describe the principle of a standard gyro compass
53.2	Describe the principle of a fiber optic Gyro compass
53.3	Describe failure modes
53.4	Describe why a gyro might need to be set to manual speed and latitude
53.5	Describe maintenance and logical fault finding
54	Environment sensors - MRU/VRU
54.1	Describe the principle of a VRS/VRU

54.2	Describe why a DP system needs a MRU/VRS input
54.3	Describe failure modes
54.4	Describe maintenance logical fault finding and calibration required
54.5	Describe that some MRU/VRS have internal batteries
55	Environment sensors - wind sensor
55.1	Describe principle of propeller and ultrasonic wind sensors.
55.2	Describe wind feed forward
55.3	Describe the effect on DP from wind sensor outputting a too high speed and effect on model
55.4	Describe the effect on DP from wind sensor outputting a too low speed and effects on DP model.
55.5	Describe advantages and disadvantages of sensor types
55.6	Describe maintenance and logical fault finding
55.7	Describe simple checks, flags,
55.8	Describe problem with the poor positioning of wind sensors.
56	Documentation
57	DP manual
57.1	Describe every DP vessel must have DP Manual which outline DP Operations, Company DP policy, onboard documents, training and vessel hardware. Some classifications require the DP manual to be class reviewed.
58	FMEA
58.1	Describe what FMEA stands for
58.2	Describe why an FMEA is required and the legislation associated with FMEA
58.3	Describe what is contain in the two main section of an FMEA
58.4	Describe the content of the vessel study
58.5	Describe the process of developing an FMEA and the international guidelines that are recommended
58.6	(vi)Describe the overall contents of the proving trials section
58.7	Describe the meaning of A, B and C findings
58.8	Describe the requirement for FMEA to be Class approved
58.9	Describe what WCFDI worst case failure is and why is it important
58.10	Describe how to conduct FMEA trials safely
58.11	Describe why a copy of the FMEA must be in the engine room and control room
58.12	Study of an actual Vessel FMEA to illustrate the process of redundant system review
58.13	Describe action to take if errors are found in FMEA
58.14	Describe the use of FMEA functional description and block diagrams for fault finding and tracing of faults.
59	DP annual trials
59.1	Annual trials as per IMO 1580 and IMCA M 190
59.2	Describe CPP and thruster wire breaks need to be tested every year
59.3	Describe that the redundancy group are to be tested each year
60	Capability plots
60.1	Describe what a capability plot is
60.2	Describe capability plot for WCF
60.3	Describe the difference between a capability plot and a footprint plot
60.4	Describe why a foot print plot cannot be used to check a capability plot
60.5	Describe the errors that can occur within Capability plots
60.6	Describe how to use max thruster limit of 45% utilization to safeguard against error in capability plots
60.7	Describe online capability plot

60.8	Describe why reducing the number of generators and power available can affect the capability plot
61	Management of Change Procedures
61.1	Describe what is meant by Management of change
61.2	Describe why management of change is important
61.3	Describe what management of change is required for changes of hardware, software, FMEA
62	System and equipment manuals
62.1	Discuss the importance of having a full set operating and maintenance manuals for all DP related systems.
62.2	Discuss the importance of having a full set of up to date 'as built' technical drawings for the vessel.
62.3	Discuss the use and development of bridge and engine room DP checklists.
63	Hazards
63.1	Describe the importance of not carrying out unauthorised maintenance during any DP operation and permit to work.
63.2	Describe managing risk during reinstatement of equipment
64	Incident reporting - IMCA and MTS schemes
64.1	Discuss incident reporting forms for IMCA and MTS.
64.2	Discuss recent and relevant incident reports.
65	Planned maintenance system
65.1	Discuss the importance of an effective planned preventative maintenance system for all machinery and equipment related to DP.
65.2	Discuss the importance of maintaining good record keeping and equipment histories.
65.3	Discuss the importance of record keeping of service reports and technical bulletins relating to the DP equipment.
65.4	Describe the process and responsibilities of planning maintenance activities which may affect DP operations.
65.5	Discuss the requirements to carry critical spares for all DP equipment
66	<u>DOCUMENTAION</u>
66.1	-
67	IMO documents
67.1	Describe IMO 645 and IMO 1580
67.2	Describe IMO 738 and links to IMCA 117
68	OCIMF - Oil Companies International Marine Forum
68.1	DP Failure Mode Effects Analysis Assurance Framework Risk Based Guidance
69	Use of IMO 645 / 1580 by Class, IMCA and MTS
69.1	Discuss Class use of IMO 645 / 1580 and IMCA/MTS documents to formulate Class rules.
70	MTS Documents available and what they contain
70.1	MTS Design Philosophy
70.2	Offshore Tech Guidance DP- classed vessels with closed bus-tie(s)
70.3	DP Vessel Design Philosophy Guidance Part 1
70.4	DP Vessel Design Philosophy Guidance Part 2
70.5	MTS DP Operation Guidance
70.6	DPGuidance_Part2_Appendix3_Logistics
70.7	DP Guidelines on Testing of DP Systems
70.8	DP Tech Committee DP Operations Guidance_part1
70.9	MTS tech ops

70.10	Techop Annual DP Trials and Gap Analysis
70.11	Techop FMEA Gap Analysis
70.12	Techop FMEA Testing
70.13	Cross Connections
70.14	All other tech ops
71	IMCA Documents available and what they contain
71.1	IMCA M103-The design & Operation of DP vessels
71.2	IMCA M109-DP Related Documentation for DP vessels
71.3	IMCA M117-Guidelines for the training & experienced of key DP personnel _September 2016
71.4	IMCA M125-Safety Interface Document for a DP vessel working near an Offshore Platform
71.5	IMCA M140-Specification for DP Capability Plot
71.6	IMCA M163-Guidelines for Quality Assurance & quality control of software
71.7	IMCA M166-Guidance on Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA)
71.8	IMCA M182-MSF International Guidelines for the Safe Operation of DP OSV
71.9	IMCA M190-Guidance for Developing and Conducting DP Annual Trials programmes
71.10	IMCA M206-A guide to DP electrical power and control systems
71.11	IMCA M220-Guidance on Operational Activity Planning
71.12	IMCA M244-Guidance on vessel USBL systems for use in offshore survey, positioning and DP operations
71.13	IMCA M247-Identify DP System Components and their Failure Modes
71.14	IMCA M252-Guidance on position reference systems and sensors for DP operations
72	Manning, training and DP emergency drills
72.1	Describe engine-room manning and watchkeeping principles for DP operations
72.2	Describe requirements for good communication between bridge and engine room at all times
72.3	Describe the use of checklists and need to promptly report to Bridge of any changes in operational status
72.4	Describe the need to keep the Chief Engineer updated with any operational problems
72.5	Describe the operation of the status alert system
72.6	Describe the requirement for comprehensive engine room standing orders
72.7	Describe the requirement for a comprehensive handover during change of watch-keepers
72.8	Describe the Planning of on-board drills, real and desktop
72.9	Describe the use of 'mobilisation' and 'start of project' DP trials to ensure system operational readiness
72.10	Describe the development of standard engine room DP procedures for vessel
72.11	Describe the need for performing DP drills and their different types
72.12	Describe how to conduct a Partial blackout drill.
72.13	Describe how to conduct a full blackout drill.
72.14	Describe how to conduct a drill for a broken fuel line.
72.15	Describe how to conduct a drill for a broken cooling pipe.
72.16	Describe how to conduct a fire drill when on DP.
73	DP operation and effects on DP system
74	ASOG – principle, layout and use of activity-specific operational guidelines
74.1	Describe IMCA 220 and MTS Tech Ops documents outline ASOG in detail
74.2	Describe ASOG list how the vessel equipment is setup for the current industry mission
74.3	Describe ASOG should match the FMEA
74.4	Describe ASOG will state what action to take after a failure
74.5	Describe ASOG needs to be approved by charterer, shore management and vessel
74.6	Describe how the ASOG will be use as a decision-making tool after a failure

74.7	Describe the ASOG is used for the safe setup of DP vessel
74.8	Describe the ASOG is the bridging document between the vessel and charterer and layout how the DPO must have their vessel setup and operational limits
74.9	Describe the alignment of alert light system and ASOG
74.10	Describe how the ASOG/CAM is used to reduce risk
74.11	Describe the CAMO must match class approved FMEA
74.12	Describe the use of 'status light' system on DP vessels
74.13	Describe the ASOG/CAMO is a bridge document between vessel documentation and charterer working limits and equipment setup requirements.
75	CAMO – principle and layout of critical activity mode of operation
75.1	Describe IMCA 220 and MTS Tech Ops documents outline CAMO in detail
75.2	Describe that CAMO mode set is setup as redundancy mode of operation
75.3	Describe how the CAMO must match the vessel FMEA
76	TAM – principle and layout of task-appropriate mode
76.1	Describe IMCA 220 and MTS Tech Ops documents outline TAM in detail
76.2	Describe that TAM requirement could be less than required by the FMEA and after a failure the vessel <i>could have a loss of position</i> .
76.3	Describe TAM can be used to reduce fuel when the loss of position would not affect safety of vessel.
77	TAGOS – principle and layout of thruster and generator operating strategy
77.1	Describe how the TAGOS can be used to list what combination of generators can be online, setting of all tie breakers and maximum percentage of load used.
77.2	Describe the TAGOS arrangements
78	Limitations of different type of DP operations
78.1	Describe the mode of operation will depend on the modes supplied with DP system
78.2	Describe the reason DP vessel cannot be used for anchor handling without tow winch tension meter is feed into DP and the problem if tension meter fails.
79	SIMOPS
79.1	Describe limitations and extra redundancy required when vessel is in close proximity and drift on.
79.2	Describe that extra redundancy and generators may be requested by DPO in a high-risk drift on.
79.3	Describe at times the main watch-keeping engineer might need to stay in the control room
79.4	Describe how vessel can be affected by thruster wash from other vessels
79.5	Describe how working in close proximity to other vessels might limit the options for manoeuvring the vessel in event of a failure.
79.6	Operating in open water
79.7	Describe how in open water the vessel (ROV / Bell) might be "drift on" to a subsea asset.
79.8	Describe which position reference system will not work
79.9	Possible effects of subsea operation on DP vessels.
79.10	Underwater current on drilling risers, Lars, tether and ROV leading force on DP
79.11	Launch and recovery high risk operation
79.12	Danger of tether becoming entangled in thrusters
80	Possible effects of remote access
80.1	Describe using Remote diagnostics and the danger of use during DP
80.2	Describe the damage of cross connecting network system and cyber attack
81	Lessons learned
81.1	Common causes of DP incidents (past incident case studies)
81.2	Review IMCA DP incident flowcharts
81.3	Review of various published Incident report. (IMCA, MTS, Coastguard)

81	Information required when reporting system problems
81.1	Remote diagnostics – what information is required, where to find and how to communicate.
81.2	Describe common methods of copying system log files from operator station computer for fault analysis by equipment maker.
81.3	Describe the use of screen shots and photos of the equipment to aid fault finding. Also copies of the alarm printouts of both DP and machinery alarms when fault occurred.
81.4	Discuss the importance of maintaining records of correspondence of any fault with the equipment maker's service department and including in all relevant company technical and operations departments.
81.5	Discuss the trend in remote access via satellite link of some equipment makers. Highlight the security risks of this type of arrangement.

Part D: Instructor Manual

The Instructor manual and its Guidance Notes provide a summary of the topics that are to be presented. The manual provides information on teaching methodology and organization, and the areas that are considered appropriate and important to achieve the relevant learning outcomes. Instructors should prepare relevant lesson plans for the delivery of each topic of the course specifying the teaching strategy and method to be used and describe the learning activities of the trainees.

Course notes and resources

The course notes, PowerPoint and extra technical information can be supplied as paper based or in electronic format.

Student takeaway

The Nautical Institute recommends the *DP Operator's Handbook* eBook to be issue to each student
Training centre course training notes approved by the NI.

Part E: Evaluation and Assessment

The effectiveness of any evaluation depends to a great extent on the precision of the description of what is to be evaluated. The detailed teaching syllabus is thus designed, to assist the instructors, with descriptive verbs, mostly taken from the widely-used Bloom's taxonomy. Evaluation/Assessment is a way of finding out if learning has taken place. It enables the assessor (instructor), to ascertain if the trainees have gained the required skills and knowledge needed at a given point to effectively demonstrate their competence to perform the tasks set out.

Assessment

In assessing the achievement of competences in section B-V/f* from STCW Code, assessors should be guided by the criteria for evaluating competences.

Course Assessment

An online assessment using multiple-choice questions will be completed by each student at the end of the course. The NI will administer an online assessment. Participants successfully completing the assessment will be issued with a course completion certificate. Candidates will also be required to undertake a practical assessment administered by the Centre. The following are to be part of a practice exam on the Class "B" simulator. Using the DP system display:

- Identify a thruster pitch feedback/rpm error
- Identify a thruster command error
- Identify a position reference system fault, failure or degradation.
- Identify a sensor fault or failure.
- Identify a power plant configuration where the redundancy concept could be defeated.
- Identify a scenario where the vessel is being operated beyond its redundant limits so the WCFDI is defeated.
- Identify an alternative thruster or power configuration (thruster or generator not available) and determine whether or not the redundancy concept is intact or defeated. Can operations be conducted?
- Describe actions with reference to ASOG/CAMO/TAM in response to an equipment status change.

Online assessment

The trainee must pass an online assessment at the training centre to be awarded a certificate of completion for the DP Vessel Maintainer Course. The exam is composed of multiple-choice questions and shall be completed in 1 hour 30 minutes. The online assessment will consist of 40 questions and shall be completed with a pass mark of 70%.

Students who fail at the first attempt can have another two attempts within six months of the first attempt; however, the second attempt must be undertaken within 96 hours of the first attempt. Failing these three initial attempts, the student is required to repeat the DP Vessel Maintainer Course and undertake the assessment again.

On successful completion of the DP Vessel Maintainer Course and online assessment, the trainee Dynamic Positioning Vessel Maintainer will be issued with a Nautical Institute Dynamic Positioning Vessel Maintainer's logbook in which his/her courses, DP sea time, task completion and Statement of Suitability as a DPVM are recorded.



Annex J

Training and Certification Scheme for DP Station-keeping Systems for Remote Operations (Remote DP Operator Certificate)

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

© The Nautical Institute 2023
200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817
www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

Remote DP operator		
Title	Version	Date
Remote DP Operator	1	20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v1(January 2022)	New content

Contents

1. Introduction	194
2. Development of the Scheme	194
3. The Role of the NI	194
4. International Safety Management (ISM) Code and DP Training	194
5. Scheme Overview	195
6. Training Scheme	195
7. Scheme Layout	197
8. Minimum Entry Requirements	197
9. Revalidation	198
10. Recognition of Prior Learning	198
11. Appendix 1 The NI Model Course- DP Station Keeping Systems for Remote DP Operator Certificate	199

1. INTRODUCTION

This document provides guidance on the Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme for DP Station Keeping Systems for Remote DP Operator Certificate.

A Remote DP Operator Certificate is a Nautical Institute certificate for an Officer operating a remote vessel while the vessel is engaged in DP operation from a remote location.

2. DEVELOPMENT OF THE SCHEME

The scheme was developed based on feedback from the industry and operators of remotely operated vessels.

The scheme consists of:

- A training centre course NI standard Induction and NI simulator course
- The NI Online exam for Induction and Simulator
- NI Model Course - DP Station-keeping Systems for Remote DP Operator Certificate
- Sea time operating DP remotely
- Completion of a Remote DP Operator NI Logbook and tasks.

3. THE ROLE OF THE NI

The Nautical Institute facilitates and administers the accreditation of Dynamic Positioning training centres and the certification of DP operators as per the standard agreed by industry and flag administrations. The Remote DP Operator course is a holistic approach covering both industry best practices for onboard DPO training and the addition of remote operations training. This is to maximise the use of current training centres and allow for new Officer, partly trained or full training DPO to join remote operations.

4. INTERNATIONAL SAFETY MANAGEMENT (ISM) CODE AND DP TRAINING

The scheme is considered as training towards the Nautical Institute DP Station-keeping Scheme for Remote DP Operator Certificate.

The company should provide further training, experience, and competency assessment as per IMCA M117 and the ISM Code.

The objectives of the ISM Code are to ensure the safety of life at sea, prevent human injury or loss of life and avoid damage to the marine environment and property.

All companies operating and/or owning ships must:

- a. Provide for safe practices in ship operations and a safe working environment.
- b. Establish safeguards against all identified risks.
- c. Continuously improve safety management skills of personnel ashore and on-board ships, including preparing for emergencies related to safety and environmental protection.
- d. Comply with all mandatory rules and regulations.
- e. Ensure that applicable codes, guidelines and standards recommended by IMO, Flag states, Classification Societies and marine organisations are considered.

Regarding remote operations, the ship operator, whether owner or charterer, must ensure that Remote DP Operators undertake suitable initial training covering all relevant duties and operations of controlling the vessel remotely, including normal and emergencies. The NI does not provide remote DP operator training; instead, it accredits the training institutions to offer training to remote DP operators.

5. SCHEME OVERVIEW

The Remote DP operator certificate is designed to make the maximum use and knowledge of existing NI training centres, and NI approved DP instructors, officers new to the remote vessel or DP vessel industries, partly trained officers and existing DPOs in order to ensure a suitably trained and skilled workforce to operate DP vessels remotely.

The knowledge required of a remote DP operator is broadly the same as that of a DP operator on a crewed vessel. Supplemental knowledge is, however, needed to cover the operation of a vessel remotely. The training core is based on the Industry best practice of the Nautical Institute DP operators' certificate.

6. TRAINING SCHEME

By completing the Training Scheme for DP Station Keeping Systems for Remote Operations, the DP Operator will receive a DP Certificate: 'Dynamic Positioning Station Keeping Systems for Remote Operations'. This type of certification is restricted to DPOs who have completed the required DP training through remote DP Systems.

DP Station Keeping Systems for Remote Operations training differs from the Offshore training scheme, and trainees should look carefully at these differences. The training scheme uses the same Offshore logbook for recording the time when engaged in DP Operations, but additional documents must be completed

The scheme uses NI Remote DP Operator Logbook to record operational experience on remotely stationed DP Systems. A minimum of 120 hours (achieved in not less than 40 days) engaged in operating a remotely operated DP classed vessel must be completed in Phase B along with the task sections and then Phase D of another 120 hours (achieved in not less than 40 days) engaged in operating a remotely operated DP classed vessel. Up to and including a maximum of 2 hours can be recorded in one operational day. The hours and DP operational experience in phases B and D must be recorded carefully and accurately entered in the relevant sections. The DP Class and the DP system must be entered.

The task section used in the Training Scheme for DP Station-keeping Systems for Remote Operations Scheme is also different from the offshore training scheme. It reflects the sector needs and is kept under regular review to addresses contemporary needs and operations. The separate task section in the offshore logbook is to demonstrate evidence of operational experience in the completion of specific tasks relating to this scheme.

This task section can only be signed off by an RCC Master holding a DP Certificate. Those responsible for signing this section of the logbook should adhere to high professional standards and appropriately rigorous assessments of trainees before signing that a training task has been completed.

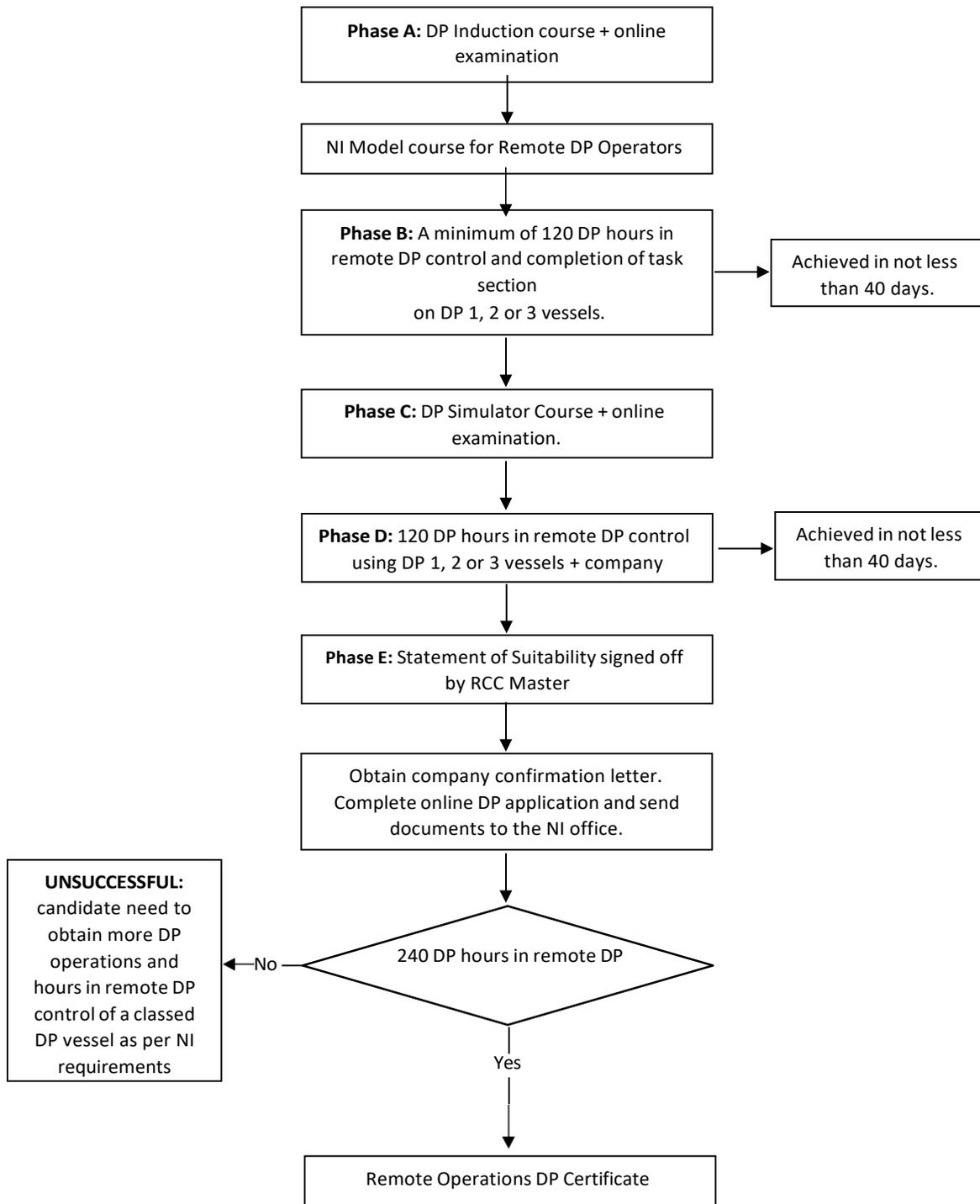
The tasks must not be block signed; each task must be signed and dated individually.

The RCC Master is required to countersign each section once all tasks in that section have been completed and signed by a certificated remote DPO. If the Master is a certified remote DPO, then a note shall be made in the logbook and, the master's DP Certificate number must be annotated for verification. The Master can then sign both sections. The signature confirming the time engaged in DP operations in the logbook should match the master's signature for the tasks for the dates that they were engaged in DP operations.

Operating company confirmation letters are required for all DP operations including dynamic positioning training experience.

Any DP operational experience gained while the logbook is at the NI for verification can be counted towards gaining certification or applying for an upgrade.

STATION KEEPING SYSTEMS FOR REMOTE OPERATIONS DP CERTIFICATE FLOWCHART



7. LAYOUT OF THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE TRAINING AND CERTIFICATION SCHEME FOR REMOTE DP OPERATORS

PHASE A. NI DP INDUCTION COURSE

Standard NI Induction course provided by an accredited training centre and cover content as listed in the Appendices. Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.1 – (Current version) plus NI online exam.

Layout of the Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme for Remote DP Operators.

PHASE A1 NI MODEL COURSE FOR DP STATION KEEPING SYSTEM FOR REMOTE DP OPERATOR CERTIFICATE.

Complete detail of this course is in Appendix One. The course covers all extra knowledge required to operate a vessel remotely.

PHASE B: DP SEA TIME ONBOARD ACTIVE DP VESSEL AND TASK SECTION OF LOGBOOK

The Officer is required to log 120 hours of remotely operating a Vessel controlled by a DP system in a minimum of 40 days and complete the task section of the Remote DP Operator NI Logbook before attending the NI Simulator course.

PHASE C: NI DP SIMULATOR COURSE

Standard NI Simulator course provided by an accredited training centre and cover content as listed in the Appendices. Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.1 – (Current version) plus NI online exam.

PHASE D: DP SEA TIME ONBOARD ACTIVE DP VESSEL AND TASK SECTION OF LOGBOOK

The Officer must log an extra 120 hours of remotely operating a Vessel controlled by a DP vessel in a minimum of 40 days and complete the task section of the Remote DP Operator NI Logbook. Furthermore, obtain a company confirmation letter.

PART 3: STATEMENT OF SUITABILITY

Statement of Suitability signed off by Remote DP Operator Team Leader.

NOTES ON REMOTE DP SEA TIME

All remote DP sea time shall be when the DP operator controls remotely operated vessel from a remote location when the vessel is controlled in fully auto DP mode. A company confirmation letter to be supplied to NI covering all Remote DP Sea time.

8. MINIMUM ENTRY REQUIREMENTS

Following the 2010 Manila amendments to the STCW Convention and Code, The Nautical Institute (the NI) has implemented the following criteria for entry into the DP Operators training scheme:

The minimum qualification is set at STCW Regulation II/1 - II/2 - II/3 Deck, Regulation III/1 – III /2 – III/3 – III/6 Engine and Regulation III/6 for ETOs

STCW	DEFINITION
II/1 Deck	Officers in charge of a navigational watch on ships of 500 GT or more.
II/2 Deck	Master or chief mate on ships of 500 GT or more.
II/3 Deck	Officers in charge of a navigational watch and Masters on ships of less than 500 GT.
III/1 Engine	Officers in charge of an engineering watch in a manned engine-room or designated duty engineers in a periodically unmanned engine-room.
III/2 Engine	Chief engineer officers and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery of 3,000kW propulsion power or more.

III/3 Engine	Chief engineer officers and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery of between 750kW and 3,000kW propulsion power.
III/6 ETO	Electro-Technical Officer

Alternative appropriate Marine Vocational Qualifications (MVQs) will be considered on a case by case basis. The NI defines an MVQ as *a non-STCW Certificate of Competency issued by a white list Maritime Administration for use in the administration's local waters only.*

9. REVALIDATION

The Remote DP Operator Certificate is valid for five years. In order to maintain the currency of the certificate, the holder shall obtain at least 300 hours of service as a Remote DP Operator within the past five years, continue to hold a valid Watchkeeper certification for the type and size of the vessel that is being remotely controlled.

10. RECOGNITION OF PRIOR LEARNING

The Remote DP Operator certificate is designed to maximise existing trained DPOs and provide a framework for training remote vessel personnel to conduct DP operations.

Officers that have prior learning (Phase A) – The NI Induction course and passed the online exam – only.

Complete NI Model Course for Remote DP Operators.

Complete seatime and task section in the NI Remote DP Operator Logbook.

Complete NI DPO Simulator Course.

Complete seatime and record in the NI Remote DP Operator Logbook.

Statement of Suitability signed off by Remote DP Operator Team Leader.

Officers that have prior learning – NI Induction and Simulator course and passed both online exams.

Complete The NI Model Course for Remote DP Operators.

Complete seatime and task section (Phase B and D) in the NI Remote DP Operator Logbook.

Statement of Suitability signed off by RCC Master.

**Note seatime onboard a vessel does not count towards Remote DP operator.*

Officers that have prior learning – Holder of an Offshore DPO certificate:

The existing DPOs must complete the Model course and 120hrs at RCC before applying the certificate to the NI Model Course for Remote DP Operators.

Complete all seatime and task sections (Phase B) in the NI Remote DP Operator Logbook.

Statement of Suitability signed off by RCC Master.

**Note seatime onboard a vessel does not count towards Remote DP operator.*

Note: Officers can use two NI DPO Logbooks

1. One for use during remote operation.
2. One for use when working offshore onboard a DP Vessel.
3. The NI permits the Inductions and the Simulator course to be recorded into both logbooks
4. If the Induction and/ or Simulator course has been conducted prior to the remote logbook being in use, a note referencing the other logbook can be inserted

11. APPENDIX 1. NI MODEL COURSE - DP STATION KEEPING SYSTEMS FOR REMOTE DP OPERATOR CERTIFICATE.

The NI Model course of Remote DP Operator covers all extra knowledge required to operate a vessel in DP remotely. The Course can be conducted online at an Accredited NI Training Centre and NI Approved RCC.

See appendix 1 for complete details.

APPENDIX 1. DP STATION KEEPING SYSTEMS FOR REMOTE DP OPERATOR CERTIFICATE MODEL COURSE

INTRODUCTION

This document covers the extra training for remote DP operators, which is required and the Nautical Institute training for the Offshore DP Scheme.

The Remote DP Operator certificate is designed to maximise existing trained DPOs and provide a framework for training remote vessel personnel to conduct DP operations.

The knowledge required of a remote DP operator is broadly the same as that of a DP operator on a crewed vessel. Supplementary knowledge is, however, required to cover the operation of a vessel remotely. The training core is based on the industry best practice of the Nautical Institute DP operators' certificate.

Purpose of the NI model course for a Remote DP Operator Certificate

The purpose of the NI model course is to assist NI Approved Training Centres and their teaching staff so the quality and effectiveness of the training courses may thereby be controlled and maintained.

As in all training endeavors, the knowledge, skills, competence, and dedication of Instructors are the key components in transferring knowledge and skills to those being trained through the NI standards.

This model course shall be a minimum duration of three days with a minimum of 20 training hours, including classroom instruction and assessments. The course covers the theoretical knowledge and extra training required for operating a vessel using Dynamic Positioning remotely from a Remote-Control Centre (RCC).

The NI Model course for Remote DP Operators can be conducted online by the NI approved RCC or a Training Centre that the Nautical Institute approves.

Layout of the Nautical Institute Training and Certification Scheme for Remote DP Operators.

Phase A. NI DP Induction Course

Standard NI Induction course provided by an accredited training centre covers the content listed in the Appendices. Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.1 – (Current version) plus the NI online exam.

Phase A1 NI Model Course for DP Station Keeping System for Remote DP Operator Certificate.

Full detail of this course is in Appendix One. The course covers all the extra knowledge required to operate a vessel in DP Remotely.

Phase B: DP Sea Time will be gained an active DP vessel and Task Section of Logbook Completed remotely.

The Officer is required to log 120 hours of remote vessel operation whilst controlled by a DP system over a minimum of 40 days and complete the task section of the Remote DP Operator NI Logbook.

Phase C: NI DP Simulator Course

Standard NI Simulator course provided by an accredited training centre and cover content as listed in the Appendices. The Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.1 – (Current version) plus the NI online exam.

Phase D: DP Sea Time will be gained remotely from an active DP vessel and Task Section of Logbook Completed.

The Officer must log an extra 120 hours of remote vessel operation whilst controlled by a DP system over a minimum of 40 days, complete the task section of the Remote DP Operator NI Logbook, and obtain a company confirmation letter.

Part 3: Statement of Suitability

Statement of Suitability signed off by Remote DP Operator Master.

Recognition of Prior Learning

The Remote DP Operator certificate is designed to maximise existing trained DPOs and provide a framework for training remote vessel personnel to conduct DP operations.

Officers that have prior learning (Phase A) – The NI Induction course and passed the online exam – only.

Complete NI Model Course for Remote DP Operators.
Complete seatime and task section in the NI Remote DP Operator Logbook.
Complete NI DPO Simulator Course.
Complete seatime and record in the NI Remote DP Operator Logbook.
Statement of Suitability signed off by Remote DP Operator Team Leader.

Officers that have prior learning – NI Induction and Simulator course and passed both online exams.

Complete NI Model Course for Remote DP Operators.
Complete seatime and task sections (Phase B and D) in the NI Remote DP Operator Logbook.
Statement of Suitability signed off by Remote DP Operator Master (Team Leader).
**Note seatime onboard a vessel does not count towards Remote DP operator.*

Officers that have prior learning – Holder of an Offshore DPO certificate

Complete NI Model Course for Remote DP Operators.
Complete all seatime and task section (Phase B and D) in the NI Remote DP Operator Logbook.
Statement of Suitability signed off by Remote DP Operator Team Leader.
**Note seatime onboard a vessel does not count towards Remote DP operator.*

Note: Officers can use two NI DPO Logbooks

1. One for use during remote operation.
2. One for use when working offshore onboard a DP Vessel.
3. The NI permits the Inductions and the Simulator course to be recorded into both logbooks
4. If the Induction and/ or Simulator course has been conducted prior to the remote logbook being in use, a note referencing the other logbook can be inserted

Use of the NI Remote DP Operator model course.

To use the model course effectively, Instructors should review the course plan and detailed syllabus, considering the information on the entry standards specified in the course framework. The trainees' actual level of knowledge, skills, and prior education should be kept in mind during this review, and any areas within the detailed syllabus that may cause difficulties because of differences between the actual trainee entry-level and that assumed by the course designer should be identified. The Nautical Institute shall approve the course material.

Lesson plans

To ensure the standard of training delivery of this new course, The Nautical Institute will supply lesson plans based on the detailed teaching syllabus via an industry working group. Instructors should pay due attention to the trainee's background and previous knowledge when adjusting the course content to suit the trainee's intake and advise of any revision of the course objectives required.

Presentation

The Nautical Institute will review and approve the training material.

Implementation

For the course to run smoothly and to be effective, considerable attention should be paid to the availability and use of:

- Properly qualified instructors.
- Suitable teaching and other spaces.
- Appropriate training equipment and teaching aids.
- Videos and multimedia presentations.

- Soft copy or hard copy training notes.
- Nautical Institute knowledge base database of training materials.

Validation

The guidance in this document has been validated by the Nautical Institute Dynamic Position Training and Executive Group (DPTEG) on Human Element, Training and Watchkeeping for use in RCC to control remote-operated DP vessels.

PART – A : COURSE FRAMEWORK

Aim

To give the student the following:

Understanding of the theoretical and practical operation of a remotely operated DP vessel.

Scope

Operators are responsible for designated Dynamic Positioning duties associated with the care, use or emergency response of Remotely Operated DP Vessels.

Minimum Entry Requirement

Following the 2010 Manila amendments to the STCW Convention and Code, The Nautical Institute (the NI) has implemented the following criteria for entry into the DP Operators training scheme:

The minimum qualification is set at STCW Regulation II/1 - II/2 - II/3 Deck, Regulation III/1 – III /2 – III/3 – III/6 Engine and Regulation III/6 for ETOs

STCW	DEFINITION
II/1 Deck	Officers in charge of a navigational watch on ships of 500 GT or more.
II/2 Deck	Master or chief mate on ships of 500 GT or more.
II/3 Deck	Officers in charge of a navigational watch and Masters on ships of less than 500 GT.
III/1 Engine	Officers in charge of an engineering watch in a manned engine-room or designated duty engineers in a periodically unmanned engine-room.
III/2 Engine	Chief engineer officers and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery of 3,000kW propulsion power or more.
III/3 Engine	Chief engineer officers and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery of between 750kW and 3,000kW propulsion power.
III/6 ETO	Electro-Technical Officer

Alternative appropriate Marine Vocational Qualifications (MVQs) will be considered on a case by case basis. The NI defines an MVQ as a *non-STCW Certificate of Competency issued by a white list Maritime Administration for use in the administration's local waters only.*

Staff requirements & Instructor Qualifications

The course shall be conducted by an NI approved DP instructor who demonstrated sufficient knowledge of the remote operation.

Teaching facilities and equipment

The course shall be conducted in a Nautical Institute Approved training centre. Suitable teaching spaces shall be equipped with equipment required by the Nautical Institute Certification and Accreditation standard, Vol.2 – (Current version)

Delivery of training shall be effective, which can be achieved through lectures, group exercises and discussions, as appropriate. The use of multi-media and simulation is intended, it should be ensured that the appropriate multi-media equipment and simulators are made available.

When the course is conducted online, group discussions and student feedback shall form part of training delivery.

Delivery Method

The course will be theoretical and give the participant an overview of remote DP operation and the effects of system and component failures. Upon completion of this course, participants will understand the typical architecture of Remote DP systems and the principles of remote DP operation.

The course is set up to allow some or all course contents to be presented using online delivery methods. The student-to-instructor ratio will be a maximum of eight students to one instructor, regardless of training delivery method, to ensure proper learning.

PART – B : GENERAL OUTLINE

Timetable

The course shall be a minimum duration of three days with a minimum of 20 hours teaching time

Course Outline

- Introduction to the remote operation of maritime systems
- Vessel Tasking and Monitoring
- Control Centre organisation
- Introduction to mission risks and mitigations during remote operation
- Off-Nominal Conditions – Response and Mitigation
- Remote sensors
- Autonomous remotely operated systems and case studies
- Future Developments
- Cross-industry learnings (road, rail, aviation)
- Task section of the Remote DPO logbook
- DP system screen for fault finding.

The course comprises lectures and videos of RCC and Remote DP Operators controlling a DP vessel.

The learning objective format is used in the detailed teaching syllabus given in Part C; the outline below summarises of the course material. The numbering system used below reflects that of the detailed teaching syllabus.

Course Assessment

An assessment using multiple-choice questions will be completed by each student at the end of the course.

Learning objectives

The following detailed course outline has been developed in learning objectives.

1	Introduction to the remote operation of maritime systems	
1.1	Simple description	
1.1.1	Why remote operation vs manned operation	
1.1.1.1	Manned vessel	
1.1.1.2	Unmanned vessel	
1.1.2	Remote control vs remote monitoring	
1.1.3	Operation from a standby vessel	
1.1.4	Operation from shore based RCC	
1.1.5	Remote operation using on board autonomy (example – remote command for DP to move vessel)	
1.1.6	Remote operation without onboard autonomy (example – remote joystick control)	
1.2	Important elements	
1.2.1	Data communications	
1.2.1.1	Coastal (cellular)	
1.2.1.2	Mid ocean (satellite)	
1.2.1.3	Other (vessel to vessel)	
1.2.1.4	Communications redundancy	
1.2.1.5	Link latency	
1.2.1.6	Bandwidth	
1.2.1.7	Throughput throttling, dropped packets, antenna shadowing	
1.2.1.8	Data compression	
1.2.1.9	Cyber/link security	
1.2.2	Situational awareness – for navigational purposes	
1.2.3	Situational awareness – on board vessel (ie need to monitor offloading operations while holding station next to a rig)	
1.2.4	Need for onboard functions (ie collision detection during navigation)	
1.2.5	Voice communications with other vessels (ie remote VHF)	
1.2.6	SOLAS – providing aid to other vessels in need	
1.3	Regulations	
1.3.1	Ship design	
1.3.2	Responsible party	
1.3.3	Jurisdiction (RCC in Norway, remote vessel flag state is Bahamas, vessel collides with another vessel off coast of Africa with loss of life)	
2	Vessel tasking and monitoring	
2.1	Need for operational protocols	
2.1.1	Operational start up (at dock or anchor)	

2.1.2	Coastal and high traffic area operation	
2.1.3	Oceanic operation	
2.1.4	Protocol for handover to another operator, or control transfer to another desk in RCC	
2.1.5	Risk analysis	
2.1.6	Safe operation	
2.2	Monitoring vessel data	
2.2.1	Engines and generators	
2.2.2	Propulsion, steering and thrusters	
2.2.3	Trim and ballast	
2.2.4	No audio or tactile feedback (no deck vibration at RCC)	
2.2.5	Identification of problems based on instrument data only	
2.2.5.1	For low bandwidth data links may only receive a reduced set of data, or update rate for some data may be low.	
2.2.5.2	May have to direct that specific data is sent to identify a root cause	
2.2.6	Alerts and alarms	
2.3	Situational awareness	
2.3.1	Sensor fusion presentation	
2.3.2	360-degree video?	
2.4	Vessel radio(s) and voice communication	
3	Control centre organisation	
3.1	Staffing of RCC	
3.1.1	Management	
3.1.2	Responsibilities	
3.2	Need for controlled access to physical control centre(s) within RCC – security	
3.3	Control desk	
3.3.1	One per vessel	
3.3.2	One per multiple vessels (?)	
3.3.3	Protocol to hand desk over to another operator	
3.3.4	Protocol to hand vessel over to another desk	
3.3.5	Desk equipment failure	
3.4	Need for standards (can one desk operate with equipment from different suppliers of shipboard equipment)	
3.5	Record keeping	
3.5.1	Logbook	
3.5.2	Data logs	

4	Introduction to mission risks and mitigations during remote operation	
4.1	Degrading or loss of communications with vessel	
4.2	Equipment failure	
4.3	Piracy	
4.4	Sensor spoofing or other malicious interference	

5	Off-nominal conditions – response and mitigation	
5.1	Escalation of issues	
5.2	Degrading or loss of communication with vessel	
5.3	Physical security threats to vessel	
5.4	Cyber attacks	
5.5	Suspected sensor spoofing	
5.6	Maritime emergency response – SOLAS	
5.7	RCC emergency response (fire, physical attack, earthquake)	
5.8	Pollution prevention	
5.9	Vessel allision, collision, or other on vessel problem	
6	Remote sensors	
6.1	Position, heading and environmental (if no DP system)	
6.2	Sensor fusion and presentation of data	
6.2.1	Video	
6.2.1.1	Visual presentation	
6.2.1.2	Object detection	
6.2.1.2	Distance measurement	
6.2.1.3	Single camera vs dual camera (stereoscopic)	
6.3.2	LIDAR	
6.3.2.1	Object detection	
6.3.2.2	Distance measurement	
6.3.3	Radar	
6.3.3.1	Object detection	
6.3.3.2	Distance measurement	
6.3.4	AIS	
6.3	Audio	
7	Autonomous Remotely operated systems and case studies	
7.1	Concepts of uncrewed Remotely Controlled Maritime Autonomous Surface Ship	
7.2	Industry regulations and responsibilities	
7.3	Understanding some of seafarer training needs	
7.4	Principles of Autonomous systems	
7.5	Safety principles and risk assessment on board	
7.6	Command control and communication skills	
7.7	Cognitive and technical skills,	
7.8	Some skills for human machine interaction	
7.9	System checks and planned maintenance	
7.10	Rough Sea awareness and handling	

7.11	Route planning and monitoring and operational limits	
7.12	Emergencies contingencies and degraded sensors such as GPS, Gyro errors	
7.13	Bridge team management structure on board	
8	DP system screen for fault finding	



Annex K

**Continuing Professional Development (CPD)
for Revalidation of the Nautical Institute DP
Operator Certificate and DPVM Certificates**

ACCREDITATION STANDARD

January 2023

DISCLAIMER

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure that all the information in this document is updated and correct, The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any loss, financial or otherwise, direct or indirect, resulting from the use of this information. The Nautical Institute cannot be held responsible for any damage to property, trainers, or operators whilst following these guidelines. This information is produced in good faith, but we cannot guarantee the accuracy and/or completeness of the information, which is produced for guidance purposes only.

© The Nautical Institute 2023
200B Lambeth Road, London SE1 7JY, United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0) 207 928 1351 Fax: (0) 207 401 2817
www.nautinst.org www.nialexisplatform.org

DOCUMENT VERSION CONTROL

Continuing Professional Development (CPD) ACCREDITATION STANDARD		
Continuing Professional Development (CPD)	Version 1	Date 20/01/2023

TABLE OF CHANGES

Page	Subject	Original content v1 (January 2022)	New content
207	CPD		New edition

Contents

SECTION 1: CPD FOR REVALIDATION FOR THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP OPERATOR CERTIFICATE AND DPVM CERTIFICATE	211
INTRODUCTION TO THE NI CPD STANDARD	
The role of The Nautical Institute.	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The International Safety Management Code (ISM) and Dynamic Positioning (DP) Training IMCA 117 – IMO approved standard• Overview of The Nautical Institute’s DP revalidation and the use of CPD. Pathways to revalidation of NI DP Operator Certificate and DPVM Certificate Deck Officers• Technical Staff with the DP Vessel Maintainer Certificate (DPVM)• Who can gain NI approval to operate a CPD scheme for the revalidations of DPO and holder of DPVM certificate• CPD – Revalidation flowchart.	
SECTION 2: TRAINING AND ACCREDITATION STANDARD	215
Time to complete the Training Scheme Certificate	
SECTION 3: THE PROCESS FOR ACCREDITATION OF CPD BY THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE	216
APPENDIX 1:	217
Key DP Personnel Continuous Professional Development (CPD):	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• CPD definition• DP competency and CPD• DP refresher training• Maintaining personal performance	
APPENDIX 2:	220
Nautical Institute - CPD contents:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Section One• Section Two	
DP position reference systems and sensors	
Power and power generation systems	
Thrusters and thruster control systems	
DP system computer, controllers, network	
IMO, IMCA, MTS and class documents	
DP documentation on board DP vessels	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• DP set-up• DP bridge watchkeeping• Position-keeping• Environmental conditions• Alarms and indicators• Change of DP watch• Normal completion of a DP operation	

SECTION 1 CPD FOR REVALIDATION FOR NAUTICAL INSTITUTE DP OPERATOR CERTIFICATE AND DPVM CERTIFICATES

INTRODUCTION TO THE NI CPD STANDARD

The dynamic positioning industry has asked The Nautical Institute to provide a solution to help stop skill fading and keep knowledge updated to ensure safe DP operations.

This document provides standards for CPD schemes approved by the NI.

This accreditation standard has been developed taking into consideration the following documents:

- IMCA M117 and relevant IMCA documents
- OCIMF Dynamic Positioning Assurance Framework risk-based guidance
- MTS DP documents
- *NI DP Operator's Handbook*
- IMCA DP Event Reporting Scheme
- Advice from Industry stakeholders through DPTEG.

These standards have been developed and kept up to date with the full engagement and cooperation of the Nautical Institute DP Training Executive Group (DPTEG).

THE ROLE OF THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE

The Nautical Institute facilitates and administers the accreditation of continuing professional development schemes (CPD) for revalidating the Nautical Institute DP Operator Certificate and DPVM Certificates as per this standard approved by DPTEG.

The NI runs a CPD workshop every year for CPD providers to review CPD content.

THE INTERNATIONAL SAFETY MANAGEMENT CODE (ISM) AND DYNAMIC POSITIONING (DP) TRAINING

The NI DP CPD scheme is considered part of “continuously improve” training of ISM Code and is part of the Nautical Institute revalidation of the DP Operator’s Certificate and the DP Vessel Maintainer’s Certificate.

IMCA M117 guidelines and the ISM Code

The objectives of the ISM Code are to ensure the safety of life at sea, prevent human injury or loss of life and avoid damage to the marine environment. The International Maritime Organization’s Maritime Safety Committee (MSC) issued circular MSC/Circ.738, which noted that IMCA had prepared a publication on the “Training and experience of key DP personnel” and invited member governments to bring that publication to the attention of the bodies concerned and apply the guidelines to the training of key DP personnel.

All companies operating and/or owning ships must:

- Provide for safe practices in ship operations and a safe working environment
- Establish safeguards against all identified risks
- Continuously improve safety management skills of personnel ashore and on board ships, including preparing for emergencies related to safety and environmental protection
- Comply with all mandatory rules and regulations
- Ensure that applicable codes, guidelines and standards recommended by IMO, flag states, classification societies and marine organisations are considered.

Regarding DP operator and DP technical staff training, the ship operator, whether owner or charterer, must ensure “continuing improvement” programmes are in place for everyday operations and emergencies.

The NI does not provide DP training; instead, it accredits training institutions. A list of training providers for NI-accredited CPD can be found on the NI’s website.

OVERVIEW OF THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE'S DP REVALIDATION AND THE USE OF CPD

The main aim of the NI revalidation is to stop skill-fade and continue upgrading skills to ensure safe DP operations.

Pathways to revalidation of NI DP Operator Certificate and DPVM Certificate

DECK OFFICERS

- A.** DPO with 150 DP days or more sea time will need to:
- Successfully pass the NI Revalidation Course online exam and either:
 - i. NI-approved Continuing Professional Development (CPD) Scheme
 - or*
 - ii. NI DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.
- B.** DPO with 30 days or more DP Sea-time may revalidate with the following option:
- i. NI DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.
- C.** DPO with NO DP sea time or less than 30 days must complete the NI DP Revalidation Course. When revalidating using the Revalidation Course for a second or subsequent time, the DPO must follow the rules as per the standard with respect to sea time requirements.

TECHNICAL STAFF WITH THE DP VESSEL MAINTAINER CERTIFICATE (DPVM)

- D.** The holder of a DPVM Certificate with 150 DP days or more sea time will need to:
- Successfully pass the NI Revalidation Course online exam and either:
 - iii NI-approved continuing professional development (CPD) scheme
 - or*
 - iv NI DPVM Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.
- E.** DPVM with 30 days or more DP sea time may revalidate with the following option
- NI DP Refresher and Competency Assessment Course.
- F.** DPVM with NO DP sea time or less than 30 days must complete the NI DPVM Revalidation Course. When revalidating using the Revalidation Course for a second or subsequent time, the DP technical staff must follow the rules as per the standard with respect to sea time requirements.

Regardless of which option is taken, The Nautical Institute recommends using the NI-approved CPD for all the officers.

WHO CAN APPLY TO THE NI FOR APPROVAL TO OPERATE A CPD SCHEME FOR REVALIDATION OF THE NI DPO AND HOLDER OF DPVM CERTIFICATE

- A.** All the NI-accredited training centres, following Nautical Institute approval.
- B.** Any other CPD supplier that meets the Nautical Institute CPD Standard can apply.

To obtain approval for a CPD programme for use in NI revalidation, the following are required:

- The learning material used and the login for the CPD programme must be available to the DPO and DPVM for a minimum of five years
- The Nautical Institute accreditation is for the complete training programme
- CPD can either be fully online or instructor-led training online
- The CPD supplier must appoint a subject matter expert (SME) to monitor the content and operation of the CPD scheme. As a minimum, the SME must have seagoing experience on DP vessels with experience with FMEA and annual trials; it is recommended that they are also a NI DP instructor.
- Online questions and an answering system that are available to the officer, in order to support training
- The officer must be able to send feedback about the CPD
- Online DP simulation exercises or practical exercises on board.

The Nautical Institute accreditation for the training provider and for CPD is for three years.

MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS TO USE THE NI-APPROVED CPD SCHEME AS PART OF REVALIDATION

- The officer must hold a valid NI DP Operator Certificate or DP Vessel Maintainer Certificate.
- No CPD will be counted towards revalidation while the certificate is expired.

Note: Apart from their use in the revalidation process, CPD schemes should be made available and are recommended for use by all key DP personnel.

SECTION 2: TRAINING AND ACCREDITATION STANDARD

Accreditation is given for the DP Maintainer's Course.

Where a centre has an appropriate simulator to support the delivery and assessment of the DP Engineering Course, this may be used, upon Nautical Institute validation, to complement the sea time experience and provide the practical elements of the course, including emergency situation training.

The Statement of Suitability should be completed at the end of the final period of sea time prior to a certificate application being made.

The attention of Master and Chief Engineer is drawn to this statement concerning the final assessment of the trainee DP engineer:

the officer's suitability to undertake full DP engineering watchkeeping responsibility on board a DP vessel

Masters and Chief Engineers should consider carefully whether they can affirm the statements within this section before signing.

TIME TO COMPLETE THE CPD SCHEME

CPD, as the name suggests, should be a continuous programme throughout the **five-year** period that the officer holds a valid DPO Certificate or DPVM Certificate.

The officer must hold a valid DPO or DPVM Certificate to gain sea time or use CPD for revalidation purpose. However, use of CPD is encouraged for all key DP personnel at all times.

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLETION

- A certificate is to be provided at the end of each module. Each module is to run for a maximum of one year.
- The certificate lists the contents of the module completed
- The certificate must be unique to the candidate
- The NI is to be advised of all certifications issued, so that the NI can validate the authenticity of the certificate.

SECTION 3: THE PROCESS FOR ACCREDITATION OF CPD BY THE NAUTICAL INSTITUTE

Usually, only centres approved by The Nautical Institute for DP training will be accredited, after audit and approval, for running the NI DP CPD Scheme.

The CPD Scheme must be audited and reaccredited every three years.

An organisation that is not a Nautical Institute-approved training centre may apply to run the scheme, and the NI will review the application. It is recommended that the organisation supplying the CPD does so through NI training centres.

Noted: The CPD needs to be provided by a third party or by a training centre that has been approved by the NI to run the NI DP CPD Scheme.

Nautical Institute accreditation will be for three years.

IMPLEMENTATION OF CPD SCHEME

Table 1 Revalidation matrix

1 Jan 2024	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of one year of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2025	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of two years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2026	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of three years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2027	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of four years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2028	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of five years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Those who do not meet all the new requirements will be given 12 months to do so, after which they can reapply for revalidation.
1 Jan 2029	A DPO/DPVM with 150 days DP sea time who is applying for revalidation will have to sit the NI Revalidation Course online exam and complete a minimum of five years of the NI-approved CPD programme or complete the NI DP Refresher Course. Since from 1 st January 2029, the 12 months latitude to complete the CPD programme does not apply.

APPENDIX 1

Guidelines for the Training and Experience of Key DP personnel

(This text is taken from IMCA 117 Section 10)

10 Key DP Personnel Continuous Professional Development (CPD)

10.1 CPD Definition

For the purpose of these guidelines CPD is the systematic maintenance, improvement and broadening of knowledge, understanding, personal qualities and skills throughout the individual's working life.

Typical CPD activities include:

- ◆ attending training courses;
- ◆ work-based learning;
- ◆ distance learning and private study;
- ◆ preparation and delivery of lectures and presentations;
- ◆ writing DP related industry papers;
- ◆ attending lectures, seminars or conferences;
- ◆ acting as a mentor or instructor.

The benefits of CPD include:

- ◆ realising an individual's potential;
- ◆ improved morale and motivation;
- ◆ improved company performance;
- ◆ smarter crew appraisal processes.

CPD programmes should be an integral part of the vessel owner/operator SMS and should establish the assessment and training periods for key DP personnel and whether this is conducted onboard or ashore.

10.2 DP Competency and CPD

The interrelationship between qualification, experience, maintaining competence and the principle of revalidation is described in section 8. The development, maintenance and retention of such skills can be assured by:

- ◆ Continuous regular performance of DP operations:
 - All key DP personal should maintain a record of their experience gained on DP vessels;
- ◆ Regular training and practice of DP skills:
 - Structured training plans should be developed by companies to ensure that all personnel have the best preparation to respond efficiently and effectively to all

anticipated normal, potential abnormal and emergency DP operations;

- ◆ Refresher training:
 - The risk of skill fading can be mitigated by periods of formal refresher training. Refresher training is a fundamental requirement for all DP personnel;
- ◆ Mentoring:
 - Mentoring is an effective way to develop junior personnel into better and more effective crew members. It is now accepted that people learn in different ways and understanding the character of those being mentored is key for those mentoring others. Companies should provide a structured mentoring process including issuance of guidance and objectives to mentors;
- ◆ Regular performance assessments and setting of objectives:
 - In order to mitigate the risk of skill fade, those involved in key DP roles should undergo regular performance assessment. The establishment of performance objectives and setting of other goals should be considered at annual career appraisals where used;
- ◆ Preparation for future technology and operational innovations:
 - CPD can facilitate the introduction of new technology, improved practices and procedures in a safe, timely and effective manner.

10.3 DP Refresher Training

The following should be considered when assessing whether refresher training is required:

- ◆ changes to operational conditions and circumstances;
- ◆ performance assessment or a periodic crew appraisal indicates a need for re-training;
- ◆ employment on a vessel engaged in an extended operation, for example, on a drilling unit or afloat, which spends prolonged periods in one location.

10.4 Maintaining Personal Performance

The three main issues affecting DP personnel performance are:

- ◆ the individual's DP experience;
- ◆ the operational requirements of the DP vessel;
- ◆ the vessel specific DP system.

The following is recommended for key DP personnel:

- i) Persons who have not operated a DP system for more than two years should attend a formal DP system refresher course or otherwise demonstrate their competency. DPOs should additionally complete 12 hours of simulator training or alternatively operate the DP system onboard under supervision prior to standing a watch (see Note 1 below).
- ii) All effort should be made to ensure key DP personnel new to the vessel attend DP trials when these are undertaken by the vessel.
- iii) Attendance at DP trials should be recognised as a positive learning experience and incorporated into the training schedules of key DP personnel to ensure as far as possible that they attend a minimum of one annual DP trial in a three-year period (see

Note 2).

- iv) If the vessel has not conducted DP operations for a period of 90 days or more, adequate re- familiarisation should be completed by DP personnel prior to re-commencing DP activities. This can be reduced by half if 12 hours of simulated DP system operations spread over a period of three days is completed.
- v) For personnel returning to a vessel on which they served on more than two years previously, with or without DP experience in between, a minimum period (see vii) of familiarisation training is recommended (see Note 3).
- vi) For recommended periods of familiarisation for key DP personnel, see section 8.
- vii) The above assumes that a familiarisation procedure is in place and that personnel have time to operate equipment prior to the vessel starting work.
- viii) After three years since last operating a particular type of DP system, or not operating any DP system, a DPO should be deemed to be joining a vessel with an unfamiliar DP system, guidance is provided under section 8.2.
- ix) In addition to vii, a DPO who has not operated a DP control system for five years or more should re-join their DPO training scheme or otherwise undergo a special refresher course designed for such personnel.
- x) If DP reference input systems have been changed or upgraded, training is to be conducted to ensure DP personnel are familiar with the new systems and are aware of any changes made to the FMEA.

Note 1: For DP training there are basically two types of simulators in the industry – the onboard simulator and the simulator found in a shore-based training centre. On the shore-based simulator it is usually possible to input a full range of variables, including errors and failures. The inclusion of the DP simulator into a full mission bridge simulator, where the trainee has the entire bridge to manage, including the DP system with all its inputs. Companies should consider what options are available and appropriate.

Note 2: Whilst these guidelines are the product of industry good practice, such practice may need to incorporate some flexibility to cope with the variation in individual key DP personnel's competence and ability, together with the vessel's operational requirements.

Note 3: If DP operations are not in progress, then an equivalent level of training could be provided by simulator training. See the comments in Note 1 regarding simulators.

For the latest version of IMCA 117 ,please visit IMCA website; www.imca-int.com

APPENDIX 2

"Remind, Refresh, Educate"					
Core Module DP Regulations & Guidance	Yr 1	Yr 2	Yr 3	Yr 4	Yr 5
IMO - Introduction, purpose, highlights including IMO MSC/Circ. 645 and IMO Circ. 1580	x				
IMCA - Introduction, purpose, highlights	x				
MTS - Introduction, purpose, highlights			x		
MSF - inc, GOMO / MSF182				x	
Class Rules - Introduction, purpose, highlights		x			
Flag State - Introduction, purpose, highlights			x		
Regulatory updates in the last 12 months	x	x	x	x	x
New or update publications and bulletins in the last 12 months	x	x	x	x	x
Management of change - The importance, lessons learned through station keeping events.	x	x	x	x	x
IMCA DP Station keeping Event Reporting Scheme	x			x	
Lessons learned from DP Station Keeping Events	x	x			x
DP Emergency Drills and Scenarios - Rules, guidance, purpose, results criteria, (examples annually)		x			
Roles & Responsibilities of Key DP personnel (according to M117)	x		x		x
DP Testing & Trials					
FMEA					
FMEA - purpose, class & guidance requirements, class involvement, specific guidance, objectives, failure types (single, common, hidden, etc)	x				
FMEA Proving trials - guidance, purpose, requirements, what should be demonstrated (redundancy concept, effectiveness of protective functions, stability of the system over full range of load conditions, monitoring functions, degraded and failure condition, etc.)	x				
FMEA 5 years proving trials - purpose, requirements, guidance, what should be demonstrated, etc	x				
DP Annual Trial	x			x	
IMCA M190, purpose, class & guidance requirements, class involvement, specific guidance, objectives, IMCA DP Practitioner Accreditation Scheme					
Field Arrival Trials		x			
Guidance, purpose, requirements, what should be demonstrated					
DP Networks (Move to DP System)					
DP Network system - overview & the risks, guidance available	x	x	x	x	x
DP Network system - Operational & Failure considerations				x	
DP Network system - Lessons learnt from DP Events DP Network system					x
Redundancy Concepts					
Worse Case Failure (WCF) & Worst Case Failure Design Intent (WCFDI) - explained	x	x	x	x	x
DP Capability plots - Purpose, IMO / Class requirements	x				
Open/closed bus operations - Rules, guidance, considerations, risks,		x			

Configuration - The importance of the FMEA, consequences of configuration errors			x		
Cross Connections - the risks and managing those risks			x		
DP Position Reference Systems and Sensors					
Introduction to Position References & Sensors	x				
Different Principles including relative & absolute and general challenges eg, blocking of signals					
Considerations for appropriate selection of PRS for DP operations					
PRS Interaction and calibrating PRS					
PRS Lessons learnt from DP events					
DGNSS		x			
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
Laser		x			
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
Laser (No Reflector)		x			
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
Microwave	x				
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
Hydroacoustic			x		
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
INS			x		
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
Taut Wire			x		
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					

Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
Gangway Sensors			x		
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
Wind Sensor			x		
Overview, advantage, disadvantage, inc. how wind profiles can be affected by assets					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
Heading Sensor				x	
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events INS					
New developments in last 5 years					
MRU / VRU					x
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events MRU					
Current Sensor					x
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events DGNSS					
New developments in last 5 years					
Tension Sensor					x
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events Tension sensor					
New developments in last 5 years					
Draft Sensor					
Overview, advantage, disadvantage					x
Operational & Failure considerations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events Draft sensor					
New developments in last 5 years					
DP System Computer, Controllers, Network, IJS					
General					
DP System Computer, Controllers - Overview inc. controllers & operator stations		x			
DP System Computers and controllers- Lessons learnt from DP Events					
Mode changes (Auto to Manual, etc) - considerations and lessons from DP station keeping events					
IJS Overview			x		
Rules & guidance					

Power supplies - Redundancy philosophy					
Location of control station					
Exercises & Drills					
Power and Power generation Systems and UPS					
General					
Power Management (e.g. General requirements / impact of mission equipment (e.g. effect on station keeping capability), operating within capability)			x		
Blackout Prevention				x	
Load dependent Starting & stopping of power generation					x
Power generation - basics of frequency & voltage control (active & reactive power)					x
Open and Closed Bus operation					
Short circuit testing					
Power limit – As per IMO 1580					
Hybrid Battery systems - Guidance, concept, principles, risks				x	
UPS - following redundancy, the requirements of operation				x	
DC Grids					
Lessons Learnt					
Thrusters and Thruster control systems					
Thrusters - Overview			x		
Thruster types - Overview, advantage, disadvantage					
Thruster allocation / Modes of operation - e.g. bias and considerations therein					
Thruster control system - the basics including EM stops and emergency/Backup controls					
Thrusters - Failure modes and their effects on operations					
Lessons learnt from DP Events					
New developments in last 5 years					
DP Operations					
Operational Planning & Decision Support Tools	x			x	
General operational planning – configuration of DP systems (CAM / TAM) and ASOG to define operational, environmental and equipment performance limits applicable when operating vessel and provide guidance on actions in the event of these limits being exceeded.					
DP alert light system					
DP setup procedures					
DP watch keeping procedures					
Environment conditions					
DP Operations Manual			x		
Layout of company standard operating procedures and Vessel specific DP operating procedures					
DP Logs and Checklists			x		
Purpose, overview of expectations / requirements					
Capability Plots and Footprint plots					

Simultaneous Operations (SIMOPS)		x			
Considerations for simultaneous operations involving DP and non DP vessels					
Mission Specific Operations					
General Considerations		x			x
Introduction to different mission types & available guidance					
The mission - its interaction with DP redundancy concept (load limitation priorities, sharing of common supplies (e.g., power, cooling, ventilation), DP3 F&F integrity of mission equipment, draught changes (e.g. heavy lifts), wind profile, blocking of PRS signals					
Reference systems & Sensors (general considerations from a mission perspective)					
Operational planning (general considerations from a mission perspective)					
Dive Support Vessels		x			
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Pipe Lay/Cable Lay		x			
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
ROV Support		x			
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Heavy Lift			x		
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Float Over			x		
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Accommodation			x		
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Drilling			x		
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
FPSO Floating Production Storage and Offloading Unit				x	
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Shuttle Tankers		x			
General description / considerations - specific to mission					

Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Trenching				x	
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Jack-up (Self-elevating)					x
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Offshore Support and Anchor Handling		x			
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Well Stimulation				x	
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Rock Placement					x
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
Dredging				x	
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					
SOV Service Operations Vessels		x			
General description / considerations - specific to mission					
Reference Systems & Sensors - specific to mission					
Operational Considerations & Planning - specific to mission					

----- End of document -----